

**teach<sup>®</sup>  
yourself**

**korean**  
mark vincent and  
jaehoon yeon



For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be  
with **teach yourself**

There are now several introductory Korean courses on the market, and our aim has been to make this one stand out in the following ways. First, it focuses on real-life situations, with dialogues which feature authentic Korean as it is spoken on the street. We have tried to make the book be led by the dialogues, while maintaining a logical progression through the basics of the grammar. Apart from the first few units, in which we have deliberately simplified things, the dialogues contain real Korean with colloquial phrases and idiomatic expressions left in and explained.

Our second aim has been to make the lesson notes as clear as possible – drawing comparisons with English to illustrate how Korean is both similar and different, rather than introducing a lot of grammatical terminology. We have tried to explain in detail the crucial grammar points, and also provide a taster for a few more advanced matters, without letting these intrude. Much non-essential grammar has been omitted to put the focus on what is especially important. The exercises have been designed to test the essential grammar thoroughly, and to give lots of practice with practical language use.

The book is a collaboration, despite the authors being 6,000 miles apart for some of its production! The content of the dialogues was jointly planned, and then became Jaehoon Yeon's responsibility. The grammar content was also jointly planned, and the notes were written by Mark Vincent and then checked by Jaehoon Yeon. The exercises were created by Mark Vincent and then checked by Jaehoon Yeon.

We are grateful to those before us who have written books about Korean, and the approach adopted here to explain

Korean grammar is indebted to Ross King and Jaehoon Yeon's *Elementary Korean* (Tuttle, 2000) and *Continuing Korean* (Tuttle, 2002). We would like to hear of any comments or suggestions for the improvement of this book, and can be contacted through the publishers.

Korean is an exciting language to learn and to speak, and we have enjoyed writing this book. Mark Vincent would like to dedicate his share of its production to Peter Dickinson and Steve Rees from Pindar School, Scarborough – two brilliant foreign language teachers from whom he learnt a great deal, not least a deep love of language, languages and all things foreign. Jaehoon Yeon would like to express heartfelt thanks to his former students at SOAS whose struggle with the Korean language has contributed unwittingly but enormously to making this book.

Mark Vincent  
Jaehoon Yeon

## About the authors

Mark Vincent graduated from the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London in Korean and Linguistics. He went on to obtain both an MA and a PhD from the University of Durham, specializing in Hebrew and Biblical Studies. He has spent over a year living and studying in Seoul and has conducted research and published in several areas of Korean studies and the Hebrew Bible. He currently works in asset management for a major investment company.

Jaehoon Yeon received his BA and MA in Linguistics at Seoul National University, and his PhD in Linguistics at SOAS, University of London. He is the co-author of *Elementary Korean* and *Continuing Korean* (Tuttle Publishing Co.) and has published many articles on Korean linguistics. He is currently lecturing in Korean language and literature at SOAS, University of London.

Korean is a fascinating language to study. For a start, it has a completely different alphabet to ours, a writing system which is unique among the languages of the world. Its grammar is entirely different to English – so much so that at first everything seems to be expressed backwards in Korean! On top of this, it has sounds which are alien to any that we have in European languages. That's quite a lot to cope with already, and we haven't even mentioned the different cultural assumptions which underlie the different languages!

Korean is not an easy language to learn. But, as we hope you'll come to experience for yourself very soon, the challenges that the language presents are what make communicating in it so rewarding. When you begin to communicate in Korean, you will find it both entertaining and fulfilling.

### Who speaks Korean, and why should you?

If you learn Korean, you will be speaking the language of 80 or 90 million other people, the language of the only nation on earth which remains divided, the language spoken by a country with one of the world's strongest economies, the language of a people of rich and diverse culture still largely unknown in the West. Koreans will appreciate it when you try to speak with them using their language, and they will be delighted to communicate with you. Korean is the eleventh largest language in the world in terms of the number of native speakers.

Being in Korea and speaking in Korean is both exciting and challenging. Although many Koreans are learning English, most do not speak it, and of those that do, many are not able to speak coherently, even though they know lots of English words. If you

want to have a truly rewarding time when you visit Korea (whether for business or pleasure), learning Korean is the way forward.

And even in the West you can practise, too. There are now many Korean companies in Europe and the States, and there are growing communities of Koreans in Britain, on the West Coast of America, and elsewhere.

### A potted history of Korean

Grammatically Korean is related to Japanese and Mongolian (the structure of the three languages is quite similar). Korean is thought to belong to the Altaic family of languages, meaning that it is also related to Tungusic and Turkish. This may all come as a surprise, since many people assume that Korean will be like Chinese. Grammatically Korean is totally different from Chinese. There is no connection between them.

However, many Korean words (as opposed to grammar) come from Chinese, since China has been the major influence in Korea's literature and culture. Probably 50 per cent of Korean words are originally of Chinese origin. This is a bit similar to the way in which English has many words which are borrowed from Latin.

### Some tips for learning Korean

The first thing to remember is this: don't be put off by how different and difficult it all seems at first. It is different, and it is difficult. But, as long as you keep going, you will quickly begin to spot the patterns and come to understand the way that Korean sentences work. It is quite possible for a westerner to learn to speak Korean fluently – even a westerner with little previous experience of language learning. With a course like this one, you will find that although there are always new challenges along the way, you will progress rapidly and logically through the basics of the Korean language.

One of the exciting things about learning Korean is that there are so few westerners who can speak it. Despite Korea's rapid economic growth, and despite the constant American military presence in Seoul, there are still few westerners to be seen on the streets of even the largest cities. Very few of those can speak any Korean at all.

Koreans are absolutely delighted when you try to speak their language and they will bend over backwards to try to help and encourage you. They won't make you feel silly, and they won't take your efforts to speak Korean for granted, no matter how good you are.

Contrariwise, many Koreans are eager for opportunities to practise their English. If you go to Korea and are keen to improve your command of the language, it is best to be clear in your mind that you will try to speak in Korean, no matter how hard someone might try to persuade you to speak English! It is the best way to learn quickly.

## The Korean alphabet

The Korean alphabet is unique among the writing systems of the world. This is because it is the only known alphabet in the world which was specifically commissioned or made to order. From ancient times literacy in Korea had existed only among the ruling classes, and consisted of classical Chinese, or sometimes of using Chinese characters and adapting some of them for use in a Korean context. Among the majority of the people, there was no literacy at all – not even Chinese.

However, in 1446 King Sejong, the most famous of all the Korean kings and queens, commanded extensive research to be conducted in order to produce a writing system especially designed for writing Korean. This was carried out by a team of scholars, and the accuracy and sophistication of their research and phonological analysis is still a source of amazement to scholars today. The Korean alphabet, *han'gul*, is perhaps the most outstanding scientific and cultural achievement of the Korean nation.

If you are to take seriously the task of learning Korean, there is no substitute for learning to read the Korean script. It is not especially difficult (certainly not as difficult as it looks), and you will soon come to appreciate both its uniqueness and its elegance.

All the dialogues in this book appear first in Korean script, followed by a romanized version. For the first few lessons you may well want to rely on the romanized version so that you can quickly begin to speak Korean words and sentences without being troubled by the initial difficulty of being slowed down by

the writing system. But you must constantly practise reading the dialogues in the Korean script as well, without relying on the romanization. You should see romanization as a crutch to help you on your way as you learn Korean writing. By the time you have passed the first few lessons, you should be going first to the Korean texts, and looking at the romanization to test your pronunciation.

We're going to divide looking at the alphabet and pronunciation into three sections, first, to introduce you to the letters of the alphabet, then to look at the way that we have romanized those letters in this book, and finally to look at important rules of sound changes in pronunciation. First, then, the letters of the alphabet and principles of Korean writing.

The Korean script (*han'gul*) is indeed an alphabet, but it has one special feature which sets it apart from most others. In English we start writing at the beginning of a word and write a sequence of letters, each one following the next, until we reach the end. Usually (apart from the case of silent letters and other peculiarities) we pronounce each letter in turn in the sequence running from left to right.

Korean, however, instead of writing a string of letters in sequence, writes its letters in syllable blocks. Thus, take the Korean word which is pronounced as *komapsumnida*. It means *thank you*. In English we write the letters left to right, *k-o-m-a-p-s-u-m-n-i-d-a*, but Korean breaks the word into syllables: *ko-map-sum-ni-da*. Don't worry about the form of the letters, but simply have a look at the way this works in Fig. 1.

고맙습니다

Fig. 1

What we will be learning about first, then, is how to write Korean syllables. These syllables are then placed next to each other to make up words and sentences.

## Writing Korean

Every Korean syllable begins with a consonant letter (if the syllable begins with a vowel then a special null consonant symbol is inserted in place of the consonant letter; this looks like a zero, and is the last consonant letter in Fig. 2). This consonant letter has a vowel letter either on its right or underneath it (some

vowels go both to the right and underneath; we will deal with those later). Every syllable must have the consonant letter plus a vowel letter. Some syllables have another consonant letter written underneath the first consonant and the vowel, and occasionally you will meet syllables that have two consonants next to each other in this final, underneath position.

For now we will just concentrate on syllables that have one consonant letter and one vowel letter. Here are some consonant letters:

ㄱ ㅋ ㆁ ㅈ ㅊ ㄴ ㅇ

Fig. 2

These are pronounced as follows: k as in *kitchen*; t as in *toad*; p as in *potty*; ch as in *chamber*; m as in *miser*; n as in *nanny*; the last letter is the zero or null consonant, which means the syllable begins with a vowel sound – you must always write this null consonant whenever the syllable begins with a vowel sound.

Remember that we can add a vowel letter either to the right or underneath these. First, the vowels that go to the right-hand side. In Fig. 3 you will see the vowels a as in *bat*, ɔ as in *hot*, ya as in *yap*, yŏ as in *yonder*, i as in *hit* or ea in *heat* (this is why you need the recording to tell which one is to be used where!). On the next line we have made up syllables with the consonants you have learned. These are, respectively: ka, kŏ, kya, kyŏ, ki, tya, ti, pa, pŏ, chi, chŏ, ma, mŏ, nyŏ, nŏ, i, ya.

ㅏ ㅑ ㅓ ㅕ ㅗ  
가 거 가 겨 기 다 디  
바 버 지 저 마 며 녀  
너 이 야

Fig. 3

There are also other vowels which have to be written under the consonant letter. Some of these are in Fig. 4, and underneath are some syllables for you to practise. The vowels are pronounced o as in *boat* (note that this is different to the vowel ɔ which you have learnt above); u as oo in *pool*; yo as in *yokel*; yu as in *yuletide*; ũ as u in *curd* or e in *berk*. The syllables we have given you are: to, tu, tyo, tyu, tŭ, ko, kŭ, pu, pyo, cho, chŭ, mu, myu, nyu, no, o, yo.

ㅛ ㅜ ㅠ ㅠ ㅡ  
도 두 뫼 듀 드 고 구  
부 부 보 조 즈 무 뮤 누  
노 오 요

Fig. 4

You are now in a position to do Exercises 1 and 2 and you should do these at this point.

▶ Exercise 1

Read the following Korean words written in Korean script and listen to the recording.

- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| 1 바보  | 2 바나나 |
| 3 마마  | 4 가도  |
| 5 자주  | 6 아이  |
| 7 고교  | 8 묘기  |
| 9 드무오 | 10 머기 |

▶ Exercise 2

Read the following Korean words written in Korean script and listen to the recording.

- |       |        |
|-------|--------|
| 1 아버지 | 2 어머니  |
| 3 녀야  | 4 가구   |
| 5 두부  | 6 모유   |
| 7 거지  | 8 모기   |
| 9 모자  | 10 나가자 |

Now, as we remarked earlier, you can add another consonant underneath the first consonant and the vowel letter, to give three-lettered syllables. We need at this point to tell you that the null consonant symbol (the little circle) has two functions. At the beginning of the syllable it tells you that the syllable begins with a vowel sound. However, in last place in a syllable it represents the sound ng as in *bring*. Some combinations are illustrated in Fig. 5. The syllables we have given are: kim, pak, min, chŏm, kŏn, pyŏng, kom, chun, yop, tŭm, pang and ũng.

김 박 민 정 건 병  
곰 존 옴 등 방 병  
ㅇ

Fig. 5

It is now time to learn some more consonants. These are given in Fig. 6, and they are, respectively: l as in *ladle*, h as in *hope*, s as in *sat*.

ㄹ   ㅎ   ㅅ   ㅋ   ㅌ   ㅍ   ㅊ

Fig. 6

The final four consonants on the list are aspirated versions (made with a puff of air) of the four consonants you have met already: k, t, p and ch. We romanize the aspirated versions as k', t', p' and ch'. To make these aspirated sounds shape your mouth as you would to make the normal k, t, p or ch sound, and then make the sound by forcing air out of your mouth in a rush. If you put your hand to your lips as you make them (or hold up a sheet of paper) you should feel the puff of air as you make the sound (or should see the paper move). Imagine the difference between saying the c in *of course* if you were saying it calmly and naturally, and saying it again when you were irritated with someone 'don't be ridiculous, of *course* it's not, stupid!'. The first would be the Korean letter k, and the second would be k'. The difference can be important; as an example, the word pa means *concern, business* (as in 'it's not your concern'), but the word p'a means a *spring onion*!

In addition, the four consonants k, t, p and ch, along with s can also be doubled (that is, one written immediately after the other). This is a bit more difficult to explain than aspiration. Here you make your mouth (lips and tongue) very tense and make the sound lightly, without a puff of air. Once again the difference is important, and the best way to pick it up is to listen to the recording or a Korean speaker, and try to imitate the sounds. We romanize these by kk, tt, pp, cch. The consonant s can also be doubled to give ss. Fig. 7 has examples of syllables containing the double and aspirated consonants.

김   ㅋ   ګ   ㄷ   ㅌ   ㅍ   ㅊ   ㅅ   ㅆ  
 잔   ㅈ   ㅉ   ㅊ   ㅊ

Fig. 7

There are also a few more vowels to learn. Fig. 8 contains the vowels ae as a in *care*; e as in *hen*; yae as in *yesterday*; ye also as in *yesterday* (there is no significant difference in sound between yae and ye). These sounds are illustrated in the syllables maen, p'en, yae, kye.

ㅁ   ㅅ   ㅈ   ㅊ  
 ㅁ   ㅅ   ㅈ   ㅊ

Fig. 8

Finally, certain vowels are made up of combinations of others (you read the one underneath first, then the one on the right-hand side). You can probably work out the pronunciations of these for yourself, but we give you them in any case. They are as in Fig. 9: wa (o + a) as in *wag*; wo (u + ɔ) as *wa* in *wanted*; wae (o + ae) as the word *where*; we (wu + e) as *we* in *wet*; oe (o + i) as in German *Goethe*; wi (u + i) as in French *oui*; üy (ü + i, say them together, fast), sometimes pronounced as e.

ㅏ   ㅛ   ㅜ   ㅝ   ㅞ   ㅟ   ㅠ

Fig. 9

Occasionally you will meet syllables that have two consonants in the final place. Unless we tell you otherwise (by missing one of them out in the romanization) both of these should be pronounced. You will find a couple of examples, along with some examples of the vowels in the last paragraph, in Fig. 10. The syllables we have given you are: ilk, wae, kwon, hwan, palk, kwi, mwo, oen and öps.

일   ㅘ   ㅙ   ㅚ   ㅛ   ㅜ   ㅝ   ㅞ   ㅟ   ㅠ   ㅡ   ㅣ

Fig. 10

You have now learned the entire Korean alphabet, and are ready to tackle all the exercises.

You can also now look up in a dictionary any word you find written in the Korean script. The order of the Korean alphabet is given in Fig. 11. Notice that all the words beginning with vowels are grouped together under the null consonant symbol. This means that all the vowels (the last 21 symbols on the list), occur in the dictionary at the place marked by the asterisk.

ㄱ   ㅋ   ㆁ   ㄷ   ㅌ   ㄹ   ㅁ   ㅂ   ㅅ   ㅆ  
 ㅈ   ㅊ   ㆁ\*   ㅈ   ㅊ   ㅋ   ㆁ   ㆁ   ㆁ   ㆁ  
 ㅏ   ㅛ   ㅜ   ㅝ   ㅞ   ㅟ   ㅠ   ㅡ   ㅣ  
 ㅘ   ㅙ   ㅚ   ㅛ   ㅜ   ㅝ   ㅞ   ㅟ   ㅠ  
 |

Fig. 11

**Exercise 3**

The following Korean words written in Korean script are the names of countries which you should be able to recognize. Read the names and write down what the English equivalent is.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 파키스탄  | 2 멕시코   |
| 3 뉴질랜드  | 4 네델란드  |
| 5 스웨덴   | 6 덴마크   |
| 7 인도네시아 | 8 폴란드   |
| 9 캐나다   | 10 아메리카 |

**Exercise 4**

The following Korean words written in Korean script are loan words from English which you should be able to recognize. Read the names and write down what the English equivalent is.

- |           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| 1 호텔      | 2 피아노   |
| 3 컴퓨터     | 4 텔레비전  |
| 5 라디오     | 6 택시    |
| 7 레몬      | 8 아이스크림 |
| 9 햄버거     | 10 샌드위치 |
| 11 오렌지 쥬스 | 12 테니스  |
| 13 카메라    | 14 토마토  |

**▶ Exercise 5**

Read the following Korean words and listen to the recording.

- |         |       |
|---------|-------|
| 1 빵     | 2 시내  |
| 3 오징어   | 4 과일  |
| 5 안녕하세요 | 6 선생님 |
| 7 사업    | 8 말씀  |
| 9 일본    | 10 영국 |

**Romanization of Korean**

This book gives you a romanized version of all the Korean dialogues and the lesson notes it contains (that is, written in English letters). In addition, Korean scripts are given for all the dialogues and the new vocabularies.

This is not because we believe the Korean alphabet to be unimportant. On the contrary, as we have already stressed, it is very important that you learn it. However, there are two reasons why we have consistently used romanization, in addition to printing the dialogues and the vocabularies in the Korean script. The first is that we want you to move quickly through the

course, and become competent at handling Korean as a spoken language as soon as possible.

The second reason is that often Korean letters are not pronounced exactly as they are written, or rather, certain letters are pronounced in a different way under certain circumstances. We could explain all the rules for this and let you work out the pronunciation for yourself. However, by using the romanization guidelines, most of this is done for you.

There are several different methods of romanizing Korean, and the one we have used is a modified version of what is known as the McCune-Reischauer system.

You have already seen the way we romanize most of the letters from the previous explanation of the Korean alphabet, but there are a number of points to notice:

- k, t, p and ch are all written as such at the beginning of a word; however, in actual pronunciation, they can be pronounced g, d, b and j if they are preceded and followed by vowel sounds. We do not indicate this in the romanization, so that you can be sure where you should be looking up words in dictionaries or glossaries. If you listen to the recording (as you should), you will be reminded when these letters should be pronounced in the different way.

However, in the middle of a word, these letters k, t, p, ch are written as g, d, b and j when they occur between vowels. Therefore, the word which is written in Korean letters as ha-ko (the dash marking the syllable break) will be romanized here as hago.

- The consonants m and n are romanized as such; double consonants are written as kk, tt, pp, cch; aspirated consonants are written as k', t', p', ch'; the zero or null consonant is not romanized since it has no sound – remember to write it in the Korean script when a syllable begins with a vowel however. As the last consonant in a syllable, we romanize it as ng, which is the way it is pronounced (as in *bring*).
- The letter h is sometimes not pronounced; in those cases we do not romanize it, although we indicate its presence in the vocabularies by writing it in brackets as in the word man(h)i, pronounced mani. When the letter h occurs as the last consonant in a syllable and the following syllable begins with k, t, p or ch, then those sounds become aspirated. Instead of

writing *hk* in romanization, therefore, we write *k'*, which is the way in which the Korean is actually pronounced.

- The consonant *s* is pronounced *sh* (as in *shall*) when it is followed by the vowel *i*, and we romanize it as *sh* in such instances. Note that *ss + i* is pronounced *sshi*, but we romanize it as *ssi*.
- Finally, the consonant *l* is a little tricky. Sometimes it is pronounced *l* (when one of the letters to the side of it is a consonant), but between vowels it is pronounced *r*. We romanize it as *l* or *r* according to the pronunciation. Take the word *il* for example, which means *day*. When the word is followed by the subject particle *-i*, the *l* is pronounced as an *r*, so we romanize it as *ir-i*. What you have to remember is that in the vocabulary this will be listed under *il*, and not *ir*. It sounds a bit puzzling at first, but you will soon get used to it, and there is no real difficulty.

The vowels are straightforward, and are romanized in the way we described when going through the letters of the Korean alphabet. Be careful to watch the two *os*, *o* and *ö* (as in *over* and *other*); also remember that *ũ* is pronounced as the *u* in *burn*; *u* is pronounced as the *u* in *lute*. You should look over the description of the vowels again at this point to ensure that you are happy with them.

In conclusion, a word about double consonants. By this we mean two syllables in which the first ends with the same consonant as the initial consonant of the second (*om-ma*; *man-na*; *hal-la*). In these cases, hold on to the consonant sound a little longer than you would if there was just one, for example, with *omma*, say 'om', then, keeping your mouth closed and still making the humming sound of the *m*, make a little pause before you say 'ma'. Listen to this on the recording; don't get anxious about it, just remember to try to make the consonant sound a little longer than you would if there were only one of them.

You are now in a position to do the exercises on romanization.

### Exercise 1

Write the following in Korean script.

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 1 Jaemin     | 2 kayo     |
| 3 chigũm     | 4 yangju   |
| 5 marũn anju | 6 chungguk |
| 7 mashida    | 8 pap      |
| 9 chinccha   | 10 uri     |

### Exercise 2

Put the following Korean words in romanization form.

- |        |       |
|--------|-------|
| 1 어때요? | 2 사람  |
| 3 선생님  | 4 아니요 |
| 5 사무실  | 6 만나다 |
| 7 미국   | 8 학교  |
| 9 대사관  | 10 점심 |

## ▶ Pronunciation

Although Korean writing is consistent (that is, a word is always spelt in the same way), some syllables are pronounced in different ways in certain contexts (if surrounded by certain other syllables or sounds). For example, an *n* can, given certain conditions, be pronounced like an *l*. In Korean script the letter would still be written as an *n*, but Korean speakers would know to pronounce it as an *l*. You will know, not only because we are now going to tell you the most important of the pronunciation rules, but also because our romanization will tell you.

### Rule 1

When the letters *k*, *t* and *p* precede *m* or *n* or *l*, they are pronounced (and romanized) as *ng*, *n* and *m* respectively. If the letter they precede is an *l*, then the *l* also changes to an *n* sound. The following examples show in the left column how they would be spelt in *han'gul*, and in the right-hand column, the way they are pronounced and romanized. We have put dashes in to indicate the syllable breaks.

hak-nyõn	hang-nyõn
tat-nun-da	tan-nun-da
hap-ni-da	ham-ni-da
tok-lip	tong-nip

### Rule 2

*l* is pronounced as an *n* when immediately preceded by any consonant except *l* or *n*. Thus we have *tong-nip* as above (from *tok-lip*), *shimni* (from *shim-li*).

Whenever an *l* appears next to an *n*, either as *nl* or *ln*, the resulting pronunciation is *ll*: *chilli* from *chin-li*, *illyõn* from *il-nyõn*.

**Rule 3**

If a word ends in a consonant and it is not followed by a particle (a little word that attaches to nouns), or the verb *-ieyo* (to be learned in Unit 1), then the last consonant is pronounced in a special way. The last consonant is not released. That means that you say the word as you would in English, moving your mouth into position to make a final consonant sound (see below) and beginning to say it, but stopping short of releasing any air. It would sound to an English speaker almost as if the consonant had been swallowed.

If the last consonant is a **ch, ch', s, ss or h**, then the sound that you begin to make at the end of the word is the sound **t** (again, you don't release it).

We felt it was important to include these rules, because they make the book accurate and enable you to understand what is going on when it seems that the Korean text does not match up to the romanization or to what Korean speakers actually say. But we don't want you to become overly worried about it. If you listen to the recording regularly, and look carefully at the Korean script and the romanization, then you will soon pick up the rules, and the explanations we have given in this section will help you as you go.

There is a practice exercise, however, to enable you to practise the rules of this section. If you prefer, you can skip it and get straight on with the lessons themselves.

**Exercise 1**

The following examples show in the left column how they would be spelt in *han'gul*, and in the right-hand column, the way they are pronounced and romanized. Listen to the recording and practise them.

1	먹는다	mong-nŭn-da
2	한국말	hang-gung-mal
3	숙녀	sung-nyŏ
4	갑니다	kam-ni-ta
5	닫는다	tan-nŭn-da
6	작문	chang-mun
7	국민	kung-min
8	심리	sim-ni
9	앞문	am-mun
10	십만	sim-man

**Exercise 2**

A Korean never releases a consonant at the end of a syllable except when the word is followed a particle or ending that begins with a vowel. The following examples show in the left column when the last consonant is not released, and in the right column when the last consonant is released before vowels. Listen to the tape and practise them.

1	집 chip	집에	chib-e
2	앞 ap	앞에	ap'-e
3	옷 ot	옷이에요	osh-ieyo
4	낮 nat	낮은	nach-ŭn
5	낮 nat	낮이	nach'-i
6	낮 nat	낮이	nash'-i
7	국 kuk	국이에요	kug-ieyo
8	밖 pak	밖에	pakk-e
9	밭 pak	밭에	pat'-e
10	꽃 kkot	꽃이에요	kkoch'-ieyo

**How to use the course**

Most of the 14 units of this course follow the same pattern.

**Introduction** An introduction in English that explains what you will learn in the unit.

**Dialogue** In each unit there are two dialogues, followed by a list of new vocabulary and some simple comprehension questions in English or Korean. Each dialogue is followed by grammar notes which explain how to use the language patterns that have come up.

**Phrases and expressions** This section gives you expressions that are commonly used as set phrases, and also gives you translations of snippets of dialogue which contain difficult grammar patterns which you are not yet ready to analyse and which you must learn simply as set expressions for the time being.

**Vocabulary** New words from the dialogues will go into the vocabulary section. The list of words in the vocabulary follows the order in which they appear in the dialogue. Sometimes we also give you additional words which are closely related to the ones that occur in the dialogues.

The units are meant to teach you how to use Korean practically in everyday situations – how to order in a restaurant, how to

complain when your hotel room isn't quite what it should be, how to express opinions and disagreements, and so on.

**Grammar** To be able to do these things, however, you need to have a good understanding of grammar. This is the purpose of the commentary sections. Do not be put off by the quantity of grammar explanations, therefore. You do need these in order to speak Korean properly. We have done our best to keep unnecessary details and minor exceptions to rules out of the text. Do not worry if you don't understand every single bit of grammatical structure in the Korean dialogues. The important thing is that you learn the dialogues thoroughly, and that you understand the main grammar points of each unit.

**Practice** Please do the exercises! Don't be tempted to skip to the next unit until you've done them, checked them in the key at the back of the book, understood your mistakes and learned the correct answers.

Take time to learn the Korean alphabet properly, and make sure you write the exercises out in Korean script, even if you also do them in romanization.

▶ If you want to have a good command of spoken Korean, you will find the recording essential. Listen to it as often as you can – take it with you in the car or in your walkman for example. Listen back over units that you studied previously; listen to future units – to make yourself familiar with the sounds and intonations – picking out what you can, even though you won't understand everything.

Although the going will seem tough at times, Korean is a fun language, and studying it can be very rewarding. Remember to enjoy yourself – the best way to do so is to follow the maxim 'a little and often'!

# 01

where are  
you off to?/  
cheers!

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to talk about where you are going and why
- how to ask questions
- how to order drinks and snacks
- basic structure of Korean sentences
- how to make polite requests
- how to form what is known as the polite style of speech

## ▶ Where are you off to?

Sangmin meets his friend Jaemin in the street and asks him where he is off to.

상민	재민씨! 안녕하세요!
재민	네. 안녕하세요! 잘 지냈어요?
상민	네, 네. 어디 가요?
재민	지금 시내에 가요.
상민	뭐 하러 시내에 가요?
재민	빵 사러 가요.
상민	나도 빵 사러 시내에 가요.
재민	그럼 같이 가요.
상민	네. 같이 가요.

Sangmin	Jaemin-ssi! Annyŏng haseyo?
Jaemin	Ne. Annyŏng haseyo! Chal chinaessŏyo?
Sangmin	Ne, ne. Ōdi kayo?
Jaemin	Chigŭm shinae-e kayo.
Sangmin	Mwo ha-rŏ shinae-e kayo?
Jaemin	Ppang sa-rŏ kayo.
Sangmin	Na-do ppang sa-rŏ shinae-e kayo.
Jaemin	Kŭrŏm kach'i kayo.
Sangmin	Ne. Kach'i kayo.

- 1 How is Sangmin getting on?
- 2 Where is Jaemin going?
- 3 Why?
- 4 Who else is going there?
- 5 What does Jaemin suggest?

### Phrases and expressions

annyŏng haseyo?	<i>hello! / how are you?</i>
annyŏng haseyo!	<i>hello! / fine</i> (note: this phrase is both a question and a reply)
chal chinaessŏyo?	<i>how have you been doing (getting on)?</i>
chal chinaessŏyo.	<i>fine, thanks (I've been getting on well)</i> (question and reply)
ŏdi kayo?	<i>where are you going?</i>
mwo ha-rŏ ... kayo?	<i>what are you going to ... to do?</i>

(name) -ssi 씨	(title used with people's names; see section 2)
ne 네	yes
chal 잘	good, well (adverb)
ŏdi 어디	where?
ka- 가-	go (verb stem)
kayo 가요	go (stem plus polite ending -yo)
chigŭm 지금	now
shinae 시내	town centre
-e -에	to (preposition, attaches to nouns)
mwo 뭐	what?
ha- 하-	do (verb stem)
haeyo 해요	do (stem plus polite ending -yo, irregular form)

(verb stem) -rŏ -러	in order to (verb)
ha-rŏ 하러	in order to do
ppang 빵	bread
sa- 사-	buy (verb stem)
sayo 사요	buy (stem plus polite ending -yo)
na 나	I/me
-do -도	too, also (particle, attaches to nouns)
kŭrŏm 그럼	then, in that case
kach'i 같이	together

## Grammar

### 1 Korean names

Korean names usually consist of three syllables. The first syllable is the surname (the most common Korean surnames being Kim, Lee and Pak), and this is usually followed by a two-syllable first name. There are odd exceptions: sometimes the first name will only contain one syllable. The two names in this dialogue, Jaemin and Sangmin, are both first names.

In Korean, the surname (when it is used) always comes first, the opposite of the English order. Therefore, Mr Pak Jaemin's surname is Pak, and his first name Jaemin. In this book we shall always use the Korean order (Pak Jaemin) rather than the English (Jaemin Pak). When you are writing Korean names in the Korean script, remember also that Koreans put no space between the surname and the first name – they are treated almost like one word.

## 2 Talking to friends and talking about them

When referring to someone you know well in a friendly situation, either to address them directly or to talk about them, it is quite acceptable to use their first name, just like we do in English. Following the name you should use the polite title *-ssi*. You can refer to friends you know quite well and with whom you are on a similar social level as John-ssi, Deborah-ssi, Jaemin-ssi, Kyuthae-ssi, and so forth.

It is only when you are speaking to a very close friend that this *-ssi* can be dropped and you can just use their name (though if other people are present it is best to carry on using it). If you use *-ssi* you won't make any mistakes or offend anyone, whereas if you try dropping it, you could make a social mistake.

## 3 Korean verbs

All the sentences (except the first) in the dialogue end with a verb (a 'doing-word' like *walk, go, kick, steal*). Korean sentences always end with verbs in this way. In English, the position of the verb is quite different: we would say, for example, *I go to the shops*, whereas a Korean will say *I shops-to go*. Main verbs always come at the end of the sentence, and getting used to this major difference in sentence structure takes a little while, since it can seem as though you are having to say everything backwards!

The dialogue also contains other verbs which occur in the middle of a sentence. Even these are at the end in a sense, however, because they are used to end a clause. A clause is a part of a sentence which has its own verb and which could stand on its own as a sentence if it were changed a little bit. For example, the sentence *If you come then I'll go* is made up of two clauses, both of which could stand on their own as sentences (*you come* and *I'll go*). To summarize, Korean clauses and Korean sentences must always have a verb at the end. More about clauses and clause endings later.

You will notice that all the verbs have endings to them. The verbs at the end of the sentences all end in *-yo*. This is a polite way of ending a sentence. The mid-sentence verbs in this lesson all end with *-rō*. This is explained in note 7.

Korean verbs are made up of stems onto which endings can be added. Every verb has a stem; it is the most basic part of a

Korean verb. Sometimes you might want to add as many as seven different endings at once onto a verb stem! In the vocabulary sections of this book we shall usually list verbs by their stem forms, and this is the form in which you should learn them. By the rules we teach you, you will learn how to make the other forms of the verb from these stems. In the first few lessons we shall remind you when we are teaching you the stem form. If we don't tell you a stem, it is because there is something odd (irregular) about it, or because we only want you to learn one particular form of the verb in question for the time being.

Verbs are listed in a dictionary in what is known as the 'dictionary form'. This is simply the stem with the syllable *-ta* after it. You can use verbs that you learn from the dictionary simply by taking off this *-ta* and using the stem as normal with the endings described in this book. There are some verbs which behave a bit oddly, however, and we will not go systematically through all the different kinds of verb stems until Unit 7, so you should hold fire a bit with the dictionary until that point. Otherwise you could make some bad mistakes!

The verbs in this lesson, *ka-* (*go*), *ha-* (*do*), *sa-* (*buy*), all occur with quite simple endings, and we will look at these now.

## 4 Polite sentences with -yo

The verb stems of this dialogue all end in vowels (*ka-*, *ha-* and *sa-*), and to these you can add what is called the polite sentence ending, *-yo*, to form a sentence. This polite sentence ending *-yo* is also known as a particle, and it is sometimes called the 'polite particle'. Note that the verb *ha-* is irregular, and the polite sentence form is *haeyo*, not *hayo* as you would have expected.

*Kayo* is in itself a complete sentence (or clause) which means *I go, he goes, she goes, we go*, etc, depending on the context. There is no need to specify precisely who does the going in order to make a good Korean sentence. Thus, if you are talking about your mother, for example, and want to say that she goes somewhere, Korean only requires that you say *kayo* – you don't need to use a word for *she*.

We ought to explain the term 'polite sentence ending' (or 'polite particle'). Korean has various styles or levels of speech which are used according to the social situation in which you are speaking. For example, when you are having a drink with close

friends, you will use a very different speech style to that which you would use if you were addressing a meeting, or talking to somebody for the first time. The speech style is shown in Korean principally by the verb endings. Although we have formal and informal language in English, we do not have anything as systematic and widespread as the Korean system of verb endings. These verb endings are crucial to every Korean sentence, since you cannot say a Korean sentence without selecting a speech style in which to say it. You have now begun to learn the most common, *-yo*, which marks the polite style of speech. This can be used in most social situations, particularly if it is neither especially formal nor intimate. It is, if you like, a middle-of-the-road style!

Verbs in the polite style may be statements, questions, suggestions or commands – this is expressed in the tone of voice that you use to say the sentence rather than being shown explicitly in the form of the verb. You have seen this several times already in the dialogue. The phrase *kach'i kayo* is first a suggestion, then when it is used a second time it is a statement. *Chal chinaessoyo* can be both a question, asking how someone is, or a statement, saying that you are fine. *Annyöng haseyo* can also be both a question and a statement, depending on the way in which you say it.

## 5 Who are you talking about?

As we've already mentioned, Korean does not need you to specify the subject of the sentence, i.e. precisely who is doing the action the sentence describes. You can specify it if you want to for special emphasis, but as long as it is clear from the context, Korean does not require it. *Ödi kayo?* therefore, means *where are you going* – but it is not necessary to say 'you', because the context makes it clear that the speaker is asking the hearer. If you look at the last seven sentences in the dialogue (from line 3), you'll see that only one uses a subject (*na-do ppang sa-rö kayo*). The subject of that sentence (*na-do*) is stated for emphasis.

## 6 Word order

We have seen that the word order of Korean sentences is very different from English. *Chal chinaessoyo?* is a nice example, as

it literally means 'well have you been getting on?', which is the opposite of what we would say in English. Usually the order is *subject – object – verb* (SOV for short). This gives, *Peter the ball kicked, Mary the shops-to went*.

## 7 To go to do

The other verb ending introduced in this dialogue is *-rö* which means *in order to*. You add this onto a verb stem at the end of a clause, just as you added *-yo* to verb stems at the end of sentences. Note that, with verb stems which end in consonants (you haven't learned any yet, but will soon), you add the form *-urö* (rather than just *-rö*) to the verb stem.

The most complicated part here is sorting out the word order. Let's look at the English sentence 'I'm going to the shops in order to buy bread'. Korean says this by putting the two clauses the other way round: *in order to buy bread I'm going to the shops*. However, that's not all! Remember that in addition, Korean puts its verbs at the end of clauses and sentences, and puts verb and clause endings after that. This gives us *I [bread buy-in order to] to the shops go*. Notice the way one clause is embedded inside the other. Usually the subject of the sentence comes first (in this case, *I*), then the *in-order-to* clause, then the place where you're going, then the main verb:

I (subject)	go to the shops	in-order-to buy bread	(English)
I (optional)	bread buy – in-order-to	shops-to go	(Korean)

Therefore, the Korean sentence order is *na-do ppang sa-rö kayo* (*I-to bread buy-in-order-to go*). In other words, the main verb of the sentence is the going, for example *kayo* or *shinae-e kayo*. The other part of the sentence, the *in order to . . .* bit comes first, as in *ppang sa-rö kayo*, or *ppang sa-rö shinae-e kayo*. This is the correct order. Don't be tempted to try other orders – they will probably be wrong!

*Note:* This construction is only used with verbs of 'going' and 'coming'. It cannot be used with other verbs at the end of the sentence.

## ▶ Cheers!

Sangmin goes to a bar with his friends and orders from the waiter.

- 상민** 아버지, 소주 있어요?  
**아버지** 네, 네. 있어요. 소주, 맥주, 양주 다 있어요.  
**상민** 그럼, 맥주 하나하고 소주 하나 주세요.  
**아버지** 네. 알겠어요.  
**상민** 그리고 안주도 주세요. 뭐 있어요?  
**아버지** 과일하고 오징어하고 마른안주하고 파전하고  
 ... 다 있어요.  
**상민** 그럼 과일하고 오징어 주세요.

*A little while later, the waiter brings the order...*

- 아버지** 여기 있어요. 맛있게 드세요.  
**상민** 감사합니다.  
**상민** (to friends) 건배!  
**Sangmin** Ajössi, soju issöyo?  
**Ajössi** Ne, ne. Issöyo. Soju, maekju, yangju - ta issöyo.  
**Sangmin** Küröm, maekju hana-hago soju hana chuseyo.  
**Ajössi** Ne. Algessöyo.  
**Sangmin** Kürigo anju-do chuseyo. Mwo issöyo?  
**Ajössi** Kwait-hago ojingö-hago marün anju-hago p'ajön-hago  
 ... ta issöyo.  
**Sangmin** Küröm, kwait-hago ojingö chuseyo.
- A little while later, the waiter brings the order...*
- Ajössi** Yögi issöyo. Mashikke tüseyo.  
**Sangmin** Kamsa hamnida.  
**Sangmin** (to friends) Könbael!

- 1 What drinks does the waiter have?
- 2 How many drinks does Sangmin order?
- 3 What else does he ask about?
- 4 What side dishes does he order?
- 5 What does the waiter wish his guests?

### Phrases and expressions

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| ... issöyo?     | <i>do you have ... ?</i>                |
| ... chuseyo     | <i>please give me ...</i>               |
| algessöyo       | <i>fine/understood/right away</i>       |
| kamsa hamnida   | <i>thank you</i>                        |
| yögi issöyo     | <i>here you are/here it is</i>          |
| mashikke tüseyo | <i>have a good meal/enjoy your food</i> |
| könbael         | <i>cheers!</i>                          |

ajössi 아버지	waiter!
soju 소주	soju, Korean wine/vodka
iss- 있-	(1) exist, there is/are (stem) (2) have (stem)
issöyo 있어요	(as above, polite style)
maekju 맥주	beer
yangju 양주	spirits, western liquor
ta 다	all, everything
hana 하나	one
-hago -하고	and
chu- 주-	give (stem)
chuseyo 주세요	please give (polite request form)
kürigo 그리고	and (also) (used to begin a sentence)
anju 안주	snacks or side dishes for drinks
-do -도	also
kwait 과일	fruit
ojingö 오징어	squid
marün anju 마른 안주	dried snacks
p'ajön 파전	Korean-style pancake
yögi 여기	here

## Grammar

### 1 There is/there are

The verb *issöyo* means *there is* or *there are*, depending on what you are talking about (*there is a book, there are some sheep*). The stem of this verb is *iss-*, and before the polite particle *-yo* can be added, the vowel *-ö* has to be inserted. This is because *iss-* ends with a consonant, whereas the verbs from the first dialogue all ended with vowels. To repeat, stems ending in vowels usually make the polite form by adding *-yo* (an exception is the verb *ha-* (*do*), which, as you will remember, becomes *haeyo* not *hayo*). Stems ending in consonants add the ending *-öyo* to form the polite style, unless the last vowel in the stem is an *-a* or *-o*, in which case *-ayo* is added to make the polite style.

#### Polite style

vowel-stem	+ yo	
consonant-stem	+ ayo	if last vowel is -a or -o
consonant-stem	+ öyo	otherwise

The opposite of the verb *iss-* is *öps-* (*there isn't* or *there aren't*). From the rules given earlier, you can work out that its polite style form is *öpsöyo*.

This pair of verbs, as well as expressing existence and location (as in *chōgi issōyo*, *it's over there, it exists over there*), have another meaning of *have*. *Issōyo* can mean *I have/he has (one/some)*, and *ōpsōyo* can mean *I don't have*. You can tell by the context which is the relevant meaning.

You will notice again that you can make a complete sentence just with a verb (like *issōyo*). You don't need to specify the subject (who has), and you don't even need to specify what it is that you are talking about, provided that the context makes it clear. In English we usually do need to specify this sort of thing, but Korean likes to be economical and to cut out any unnecessary information.

## 2 Waiters and shopkeepers

The word *ajōssi* literally means *uncle*, but it is used as a general term to refer to a shopkeeper, waiter, or even a man in the street on occasions when formality is not called for. It can only be used for males. For females the term is *ajumma* which literally means *aunt*, but is used for any woman who is, say, over 35. The term *agassi* should be used to refer to and attract the attention of young women.

## 3 Korean particles

In the introduction we talked about the way Korean adds little words called particles to the ends of words. You can see this clearly in the dialogues. We have shown the particles by inserting a dash between the word and the particle, as in *na-do* (*me-too*), *shinae-e* (*town centre-to = to town*). Notice that the particle always comes after the noun that it relates to. English often does the opposite of this. We would say 'with me' or 'to school', but Korean says *me-with* and *school-to*.

## 4 Giving lists, and saying 'and'

The Korean word for *and* is the particle *-hago*. Imagine that you want to say one thing *and* another: *cigarettes and matches*. In Korean, the particle *-hago* attaches to the first noun of the pair, so that you would say: *cigarettes-hago matches*. The *hago* becomes a part of the word *cigarettes*, since as a particle it has to be attached to a noun. If you want to pause between the two words, you must pause after saying *hago*, not before, e.g. *cigarettes-hago* (pause) *matches*. You must not say *cigarettes*

(pause) *hago matches*. Once again, this is because *-hago* belongs to the noun it is with; it is not a free word like the English 'and'.

If there are more than two items in a list, each word is followed by *hago*, with the exception of the last, e.g.:

*cigarettes-hago matches-hago ashtray-hago lighter*

However, you can also add *-hago* onto the last noun of the group if you want to. This gives the sequence a vaguer ring – as though there might be even more items in the list, but you are deciding to stop there (or can't think of any more for the time being).

The particle *-hago* can also mean 'with'. Thus you can say *Jaemin-hago shinae-e kayo* (*I'm going to town with Jaemin*). Once again, you can add more names to the list, e.g. *Jaemin-hago Sangmin-hago shinae-e kayo*. When you are using *-hago* to mean *with*, you can also use a slightly extended form of the particle, *-hago kach'i*, e.g.:

*Jaemin-hago kach'i shinae-e kayo*.

## 5 Asking for things

You have learned about Korean verb stems and the polite ending *-yo*. You will see that this dialogue contains the verb *chuseyo*. The stem here is *chu-*, and the usual polite style ending is *-yo*. The bit in the middle however, you will learn about later. It is a form used to make polite requests, and for now simply memorize the form *chuseyo* as a word meaning *please give me*. You have also seen the same ending in the phrase *mashikke tuseyo*. *Mashikke* means *tastily*, and *tuseyo* comes from a verb stem which means *imbibe* or *take in*. Therefore the literal meaning is 'please eat tastily'.

## 6 Asking for 'one'

In the dialogue, an order is made for a beer and a *soju*. Notice how the number *hana* (*one*) comes after what is being ordered. To ask for one beer you say *maekju hana chuseyo*. To ask for one tea you can say *ch'a hana chuseyo*.

## 1 Korean drinking habits

Koreans love to get together and drink and the most popular drink particularly among men is *soju*, Korean wine/vodka, which has about a 25% alcohol content. The normal form of *soju* does not have an

especially strong taste, though recently it is being drunk more and more in fruit flavours like cherry (*cheri soju*) and lemon (*lemon soju*), and there is also even cucumber flavour (*oi soju*). Beer is becoming increasingly popular, with Korean beers being typically sweeter and lighter than their western counterparts. Another favourite is **makkölli**, which is also made from rice, and has a thick milky consistency. It is the kind of drink that you will probably either love or hate.

**Soju** is usually drunk in shots like vodka, and the phrase *one shot!*, spoken in a quasi-American accent, is very popular in Korean bars (the word for bar is **sulchip**, literally *booze house!*). If you go out to drink with Korean friends there will be toasts before each shot, and you will be expected to say one (English will be quite acceptable, at first!). Another popular habit is for each person to sing a song, so be ready with a few Elvis or Beatles numbers, no matter how bad your singing voice might be! Another alternative is the national anthem!



## Practice

You will need the following words for the exercises.

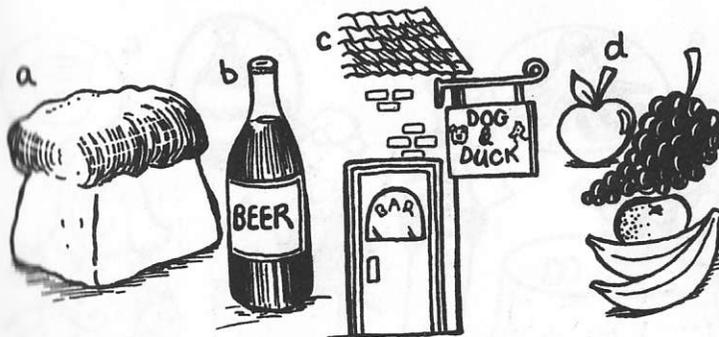
chungguk 중국	China
ilbon 일본	Japan
sulchip 술집	pub
hakkyo 학교	school
pap 밥	rice (cooked rice)
kü-daüm-e 그 다음에	after that . . .
kage 가게	shop
mashi- 마시-	drink (verb stem)
anj- 앉-	sit (verb stem)
mök- 먹-	eat (verb stem)

As you are doing these exercises, don't be tempted to try to use any words we haven't given you. You shouldn't need any!

1 Unjumble the following sentences: write them in the correct order first in romanization, then in Korean script for practice. Don't forget to work out the meaning!

- kayo ilbon-e chigüm
- issöyo maekchu ajössi
- sa-rö kage-e mwö kayo
- chuseyo ojingö yangju-hago
- kürigo chuseyo anju-do
- na-do kayo kage-e
- marün ta pap anju-hago issöyo maekju-hago

2 Make up Korean sentences to say that there is or there are the following things.



What other meaning could these sentences have?

3 Imagine that the following Korean sentences were spoken to you. Make up an appropriate response in each case.

- 어디 가요?
- 여기 있어요.
- 안녕하세요!
- 잘 지냈어요?
- 뭐 마시러 술집에 가요?
- 소주, 맥주, 양주 다 있어요.

4 Give the polite style form of the following verbs. Try making a short sentence out of each one.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| a ka-        | e öps-       |
| b iss-       | f ha-        |
| c sa-        | g anj- (sit) |
| d mök- (eat) |              |

- 5 Translate the following sentences into Korean.
- What are you going to buy at the shop?
  - Hello Mr Kim! How are you?
  - What are you doing after that?
  - Are you going to the town centre now?
  - Where are you going?
  - We have beer, fruit and bread – all of them!
  - Please also give me some rice.
  - Here is your squid. Enjoy your meal!
  - We don't have western spirits. Then give me a beer please.
  - Some Korean pancake and a soju, please.
- 6 Get the attention of the following people and ask them to give you the following things.



- 7 Read the following notes made by a waiter for two orders. What is required at each table?

1 소주		오징어
1 맥주		과일
마른안주		양주 - 위스키
		1 맥주

- 8 Make up two dialogues, based on the following scenarios.
- You meet a friend who is going to the shop. Greet him and ask where he is going. Suggest that you go together. He agrees and suggests that after that you go to the pub for a beer.
  - You are in a pub where you meet a friend. Ask how he's been and order a beer and a soju for the two of you. Ask the waiter what snacks he has, make up an appropriate response and order some fruit.

# 02

long time,  
no see!  
it's not me!

In this unit you will learn

- how to meet, greet and introduce people
- how to find where you want to be
- how to say that something is or isn't something else
- how to give your sentences subjects and topics

## ▶ Long time, no see!

Mr Kim meets an old friend Mr Pak and is introduced to Mr Pak's wife.

박선생 김선생 박선생 김선생 박선생 김선생 박선생  
 김선생님, 안녕하세요?  
 아! 박선생님! 안녕하세요!  
 오래간만에요!  
 네. 그래요. 진짜 오래간만에요.  
 잘 지냈어요?  
 네. 잘 지냈어요. 요즘 사업은 어때요?  
 그저 그래요.

(pointing to his wife) 우리 집사람이에요.

김선생 아! 그래요? 반갑습니다. 말씀 많이 들었어요.  
 박선생 부인 반갑습니다. 저는 장윤희예요.  
 김선생 저는 김진양이에요. 만나서 반갑습니다.

Mr Pak Kim sönsaengnim, annyöng haseyo?  
 Mr Kim A! Pak sönsaengnim! Annyöng haseyo!  
 Mr Pak Oraeganman-ieyo!  
 Mr Kim Ne. Kūraeyo. Chinccha oraeganman-ieyo.  
 Mr Pak Chal chinaessöyo?  
 Mr Kim Ne. Chal chinaessöyo. Yojüm saöb-un öttaeyo?  
 Mr Pak Kujö kuraeyo.

(pointing to his wife) Uri chipsaram-ieyo.

Mr Kim A! Kuraeyo? Pangapsumnida. Malssüm mani türössöyo.  
 Mr Pak's wife Pangapsumnida. Chö-nun Chang Yunhuy-eyo.  
 Mr Kim Chö-nun Kim Jinyang-ieyo. Mannasö pangapsumnida.

- 1 How long is it since they met?
- 2 How is Mr Pak's business doing?
- 3 What does Mr Kim say about Mr Pak's wife?
- 4 What is Mr Pak's wife's name?

## Phrases and expressions

oraeganman-ieyo  
 yojüm saöb-un öttaeyo?  
 kujö kūraeyo  
 malssüm mani türössöyo  
 (mannasö)pangapsumnida

long time, no see!  
 how's business these days?  
 so-so  
 I've heard a lot about you  
 pleased to meet you!



Kim sŏnsaengnim 김 선생님	Mr Kim (sonsaengnim 선생님 also means teacher)
a! 아!	ah!
Pak 박	Pak (Korean surname)
kŭraeyo (?) 그래요?	really (?), is it/it is so (?) (question and reply)
chinccha 진짜	really
yojŭm 요즘	nowadays
saŏp 사업	business
-ŭn -은	(topic particle: see note 4)
ŏttaeyo? 어때요?	how is it?
uri 우리	we/our
chip 집	house
saram 사람	person
chipsaram 집사람	wife
(noun)-ieyo -이에요	it is (equivalent to) (noun)
malssŭm 말씀	words, speech
man(h)i 많이	much, many, a lot
chŏ 저	me
-nŭn -는	(topic particle)
Jang Yunhui 장 윤희	woman's name (surname first)
Kim Jinyang 김 진양	man's name (surname first)

## Grammar

### 1 Korean surnames and titles

When you want to address Korean men politely, you can use the title *sŏnsaengnim*, which literally means *teacher*, but in practice means Mr, Sir. The title can be used on its own to speak to someone you don't know, with the surname (Kim *sŏnsaengnim*, Pak *sŏnsaengnim*), or with the full name (Pak Jaemin *sŏnsaengnim*). It is never used just with someone's first name, so you cannot say Jinyang *sŏnsaengnim* (nor, for that matter, can you say Kim-ssi or Kim Jinyang-ssi, both of which would be considered to be quite rude). Notice that, like the polite title -ssi used with first names, the title comes after the person's name, not before as in English.

The title *sŏnsaengnim* originally meant the one who was born first, and it therefore shows respect in addressing the person being spoken about as an elder. It is also the normal word for a teacher, and the context is the only way of telling whether it

means that someone is a teacher, or whether they are simply being addressed as Mr.

Addressing women is a little more complex. Often women are addressed as being their husbands' wives. This means that Mrs Cho who is married to Mr Kim (Korean women keep their own surnames rather than taking their husbands) may be addressed as Kim *sŏnsaengnim-puin* (Kim-Mr-wife). You could even say the English Mrs Cho (Misesu Cho), and sometimes Miss is also used (Misu Pak).

### 2 The copula

When you want to say that something *is* something else (e.g. Mr Kim is a Japanese teacher, this (thing) is a table, this office is the Korean department office), you use a special verb form called the copula. Like other Korean verbs, it comes at the end of the sentence. However, it behaves a little differently to ordinary verbs. To say 'A is B' (as in, *this is a Chinese book*), you would say:

A B-ieyo (or B-eyo)  
*this Chinese book-ieyo*

The form -ieyo is used when 'B' ends in a consonant, and -eyo is used when 'B' ends in a vowel:

sŏnsaengnim-ieyo *is a teacher*  
maekju-eyo *is beer*

Please note that 'is' in this sense means 'is equivalent to, is identical with'; it does not mean 'is located in' or 'is a certain way' (e.g. *is green, is angry*). English does not make this distinction. Look at the following sentences:

this is a book  
the book is on the table  
the book is green

All these use the English 'is', and yet only the first 'is' means 'is identical to'. The second 'is' expresses location, the third describes the book. It is only for the first, when you are saying that 'one thing is equivalent to' or 'the same as something else' that the copula (ieyo) is used in Korean. You must be very careful with this, as when you start to learn Korean it can be tempting to use the copula where you should not.

We have described the form A-B-ieyo, but the simple form B-ieyo is just as common. This occurs several times in this lesson, and in all cases there is an implied A which is unspoken.

Look at the following examples (we have put the implied A in brackets!):

oraeganman-ieyo (a matter of) long time no see – it is  
uri chipsaram-ieyo (this person) my wife – is

This is the same thing which we saw in unit 1: the context tells you what the subject of the sentence is, therefore you don't have to say it explicitly as you do in English.

### 3 Öttaeyo and kŭraeyo

Korean has a group of words which mean 'is (a certain way)'. Öttaeyo means *is how?*, as in:

sönsaengnim öttaeyo? what is the teacher like?, how is teacher?

saöb-un öttaeyo? what's business like, how's business?

Kŭraeyo means *is like that*. It can be used as a statement, e.g. kŭraeyo (*it is like that, that's right, it is (so)*). As a question, kŭraeyo? means *is it like that? is that so? really?*

### 4 Topics

Korean has a particle which can be attached to a noun or a phrase to emphasize that it is the topic of the sentence, that is to say, the thing which is being talked about. Sometimes we do this in English with an expression like *as for . . .*, for emphasis. We might say, for example, *As for my business, it's going pretty well at the moment*, or *As for me, I don't like cake*. Korean does this kind of thing very frequently with the topic particle *-un/-nun*. In the two sentences above, the nouns *my business* and *me* would both be followed by the topic particle in Korean to show that they are the topics of their sentences.

The particle has two forms, *-nun* when the noun you are making a topic ends in a vowel, and *-un* when it ends in a consonant. Examples are *soju-nun* (*as for soju*), *Jaemin ssi-nun* (*as for Jaemin*), *sönsaengnim-ün* (*as for teacher*), *saöb-ün* (*as for business*).

### 5 Wives and family

There are at least three words for wife, and they can be divided into two categories, honorific words and non-honorific words. Koreans are very concerned about politeness, and therefore when they are referring to someone else's wife they use an

honorific term *puin*. This term is never used to refer to your own wife, however. In Korean culture you are meant to downplay yourself, your family and your possessions, therefore to speak about your own wife as *puin* would be inappropriate and possibly even arrogant. Instead, you use either the word *chipsaram* (literally *house person*), or *anae*. It would be very rude to speak about someone else's wife with these non-honorific words.

Furthermore, when referring to your relatives, and even your house, you are expected to say *uri* (*our*) rather than *nae* or *che*, both of which mean *my*. Thus, you would say *uri chipsaram* (*our wife*) when you want to talk about your wife, even though she is no one else's. Everybody is expected to do this when they talk about their family members.

### ▶ It's not me!

Mr O is looking for the Korean teacher, Mr Kim. However, first he meets Mr Lee.

오선생 실례합니다

이선생 네?

오선생 한국말 선생님이세요?

이선생 아니요. 저는 한국말 선생님이 아니에요.  
저는 일본말 선생님이예요.

오선생 아, 죄송 합니다. 여기가 한국학과 사무실이 아니에요?

이선생 네. 한국학과가 아니에요. 여기는 일본학과예요.

오선생 그럼 한국학과 사무실이 어디예요?

이선생 저기 있어요.

Mr O goes over to the Korean department.

오선생 실례지만, 여기가 한국학과 사무실이에요?

김선생 네. 무슨 일이세요?

오선생 한국말 선생님 만나러 왔어요.

Mr O Shillye hamnida.

Mr Lee Ne?

Mr O Hangungmal sönsaengnim-iseyo?

Mr Lee Aniyö. Chö-nun hangungmal sönsaengnim-i anieyo.  
Chö-nun ilbonmal sönsaengnim-ieyo.

Mr O A, choesong hamnida. Yögi-ga hanguk hakkwa samushir-i anieyo?

Mr Lee Ne. Hanguk hakkwa-ga anieyo. Yögi-nun ilbon hakkwa-eyo.

Mr O Küröm, hanguk hakkwa samushir-i ödi-eyo?  
Mr Lee Chögi issöyo.

Mr O goes over to the Korean department.

Mr O Shillye-jiman, yögi-ga hanguk hakkwa samushir-ieyo?  
Mr Kim Ne. Musün ir-iseyo?  
Mr O Hangungmal sönsaengnim manna-rö wassöyo.

- 1 What does Mr O ask Mr Lee?
- 2 Who is Mr Lee?
- 3 Where are Mr O and Mr Lee having their conversation?
- 4 Where does Mr O go next?
- 5 Why has he come?

## Phrases and expressions

shillye hamnida ... iseyo?	<i>excuse me, please are you . . . , please? (i.e. the person I'm looking for)</i>
choesong hamnida ... ödi-eyo?	<i>I'm sorry where is . . . ?</i>
shillye-jiman ... musün ir-iseyo?	<i>excuse me, but ... what is it? how can I help you? what's the problem?</i>
... manna-rö wassöyo	<i>I came to see ...</i>

hanguk 한국	Korea(n) (pronounced han-guk 한국)
mal 말	language
hangungmal 한국말	Korean language
aniyo 아니요	no
-i -이	(subject particle: see notes)
anieyo 아니예요	is not (opposite of -(i)eyo, negative copula)
ilbon 일본	Japan
ilbonmal 일본말	Japanese language
-ga -가	(subject particle)
hakkwa 학과	department (of college/university)
samushil 사무실	office
ödi 어디	where?
chögi 저기	(over) there
musun 무슨	what, which
il 일	matter, business, work
manna- 만나-	meet (stem)
wassöyo 왔어요	came (past tense form)

## Grammar

### 1 More on verb endings

We have seen that Korean verbs take many different endings. This lesson contains the phrase shillye hamnida (*excuse me*), which is made from the verb stem shillye ha-. The polite style form of this, as you would expect from the last lesson, is shillye haeyo, since ha- is irregular. The hamnida form is what is known as the formal style, and usually when you are asking someone to excuse you, this is the form you will want to use. The formal and polite styles can be interchanged in many cases; but the formal is generally more suitable when speaking to someone older or higher in status than you. You will learn about how to make the formal style later.

This lesson also contains the form shillye-jiman. This is an abbreviation of shillye ha-jiman, the -jiman ending meaning *but*. The complete expression means *I'm sorry, but . . .* Don't worry about the -jiman ending for now; you will learn it thoroughly later. Simply remember shillye-jiman as a set expression.

### 2 Joining nouns together

As you know, Korean attaches all kinds of particles on the end of nouns to give particular meanings. We have indicated particles by putting a dash between the noun and its particle. However, Korean also allows many nouns to be strung together in a sequence. Examples are hanguk + mal, which gives hangungmal (*Korean language*) and hanguk hakkwa which means *Korean department*. We write some of these as one word (like hangungmal), and flag the individual words and the compound form in the vocabulary.

### 3 Finding the person you want

The copula is Korean's special verb form which allows you to ask if something is something else. You could use it, therefore, to ask a person if they are Mr Kim, say, or Mr Pak. However, when you do this, it is normal to use a special form of the copula -iseyo? This form is an honorific form - it shows politeness to the other person. For the moment simply learn it as a phrase: . . . iseyo? for example:

Pak sönsaengnim-iseyo? *Are you Mr Pak?*  
Hangungmal sönsaengnim-iseyo? *Are you the Korean teacher?*

## 4 Sentence subjects

In the previous dialogue you met the topic particle, and this dialogue introduces you to the subject particle, which is similar. The subject particle -i attaches to the end of nouns which end in a consonant, and the subject particle -ga attaches to nouns which end in a vowel. This gives: *maekju-ga*, *hakkyo-ga* (*school*); *sönsaengnim-i*, *kwair-i* (from *kwail*, *fruit*).

Naturally enough, the particle marks out the subject of the sentence. For example, in the sentence *The man kicked the dog*, 'the man' is the subject. In the sentence *The man is fat*, 'the man' is again the subject.

However, unfortunately, things are not quite so simple! In both of these sentences, the man could also be the topic, if the topic particle -nun were used instead of the subject particle. What is the difference between the subject and topic particles?

When something is mentioned for the first time, usually the subject particle is used. Later on, when the subject is repeated in the conversation, you can switch to use the topic particle instead.

The topic particle, you will recall, is particularly for an emphasis like the English 'as for'. It is particularly common when comparing two things, e.g. *as for me* (*me-nun*), *I hate shopping*. *As for Mum* (*Mum-nun*), *she just loves it*.

Do not worry too much about whether, in a given sentence, it is more correct to use the subject or the topic particle. Most sentences will be correct with either, although some will sound more natural to a Korean (and eventually to you) with one rather than the other. Gradually you will get the feel of which particle to use as your sense of the language develops. It is important that you do use one or the other in your sentences whenever you can, however. Do not just leave off particles, as it can tend to confuse Koreans when foreigners do so, even though they often leave them out themselves in casual speech.

## 5 Negative copula

You have learnt how to say 'A is B' (this thing-A is a book-B). Now you must learn the negative copula, 'A is not B', as in 'this thing is not a book', 'Mr Kim is not my teacher', 'this book is not a Chinese book'. The form is:

(A-subj/top) (B-subj) anieyo	(subj = subject particle; top = topic particle; you can use either)
chö-nun sönsaengnim-i anieyo	I am not a teacher
(B-subj) anieyo	
hanguk hakkwa-ga anieyo	(this) is not the Korean department

Look at the examples in the dialogue very carefully to be sure that you have understood this pattern.

## 6 When 'yes' means 'no'

Answering questions that require 'yes' and 'no' answers can be a bit tricky in Korean.

If the question is positive (*Do you like mushrooms?*, *Are you going out tonight?*), then you answer as you would in English (*Yes, I like them* or *No, I don't*).

However, if the question is negative (*Don't you like mushrooms?*, *Aren't you going out tonight?*), then the answer you give will be the opposite to what you would say in English, e.g.:

Don't you like mushrooms?

English	Yes, I do like them	No, I don't
Korean	No, I do like them	Yes, I don't

Aren't you going out tonight?

English	Yes, I am going out	No, I'm not
Korean	No, I am going out	Yes, I'm not

It goes without saying that you need to think very carefully when answering negative questions in Korean!

## 7 Where is it?

To ask where something is in Korean, you say: (B-subj) ödieyo?

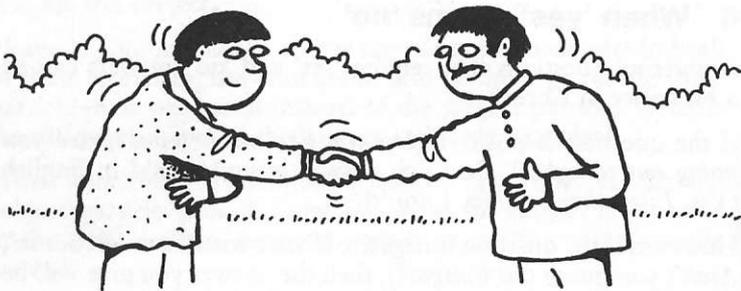
However, confusingly, you can also say (B-subj) ödi issöyo?

When you answer a *where is . . . ?* question, you must always use the verb *issöyo*: e.g.

hakkyo-ga kögi issöyo	<i>the school over there is/exists, the school is over there</i>
-----------------------	--

## i Being introduced

Koreans are very concerned about politeness, and this characteristic is especially noticeable when you meet people for the first time. It is wise to bow slightly when you shake hands with people, and be sure not to shake hands too hard. The Korean style is for the more senior person to do the shaking, while the other person allows their hand to be shaken. Phrases such as **mannasō pangapsūmnida**, which literally means *I've met you, so I'm pleased* are very common. The form **ch'ōum poepkessumnida** is even more polite, and literally means *I am seeing you for the first time*.



## Practice

For the exercises you will need the following additional vocabulary:

kōngang	건강	health
hoesa	회사	company (i.e., the company, business)
kajok	가족	family
Miguk	미국	America(n)
adul	아들	son
hakkyo	학교	school
taehakkyo	대학교	university
shinmun	신문	newspaper
chapji	잡지	magazine
chigūm	지금	now

1 The following Korean sentences have gaps where particles and word endings should be. Insert the appropriate word endings into the gaps from the selection given. If there is a choice A/B, then make sure you use the correct form. Then work out the meanings of the sentences.

- a Sangmin \_\_\_ ! Na \_\_\_ shinae \_\_\_ kayo. (e, do, ssi)  
 b Mwō ha \_\_\_ hakkyo \_\_\_ ka \_\_\_? (yo, e, -rō)

- c Kim sōnsaengnim \_\_\_ ōttaeyo? (un/nun)  
 d Yōgi \_\_\_ samushir-ieyo? (i/ga)  
 e Anieyo. Yōgi \_\_\_ samushir \_\_\_ anieyo. (i/ga, un/nun)

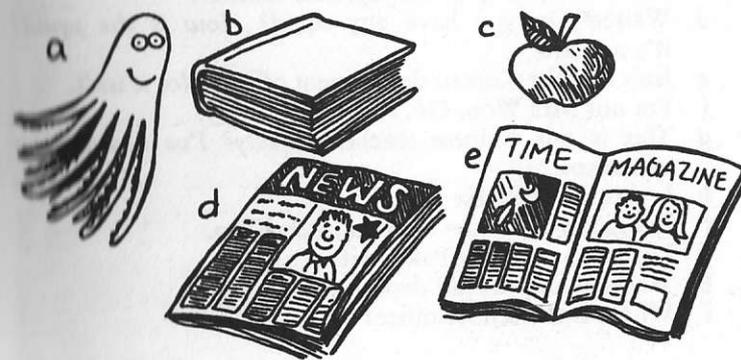
2 Say hello to the following people, and ask about how things are with them. For example, for the first one you would write the Korean equivalent of *Hello Mr O, how's the company?* (as for the company, how is it?).

- a Mr O the company  
 b Mrs Cho business  
 c Mr Pak's wife the family  
 d Taegyū school  
 e Miss Pak her health

3 Fill in the missing bits of the following dialogue with appropriate Korean sentences. Remember to check what comes after as well as what comes before, so that the whole conversation makes sense.

- a Paek sōnsaengnim, oraeganman-ieyo!  
 b \_\_\_\_\_  
 a Ne, ne. Yōjūm saōb-un ōttaeyo?  
 b \_\_\_\_\_  
 a Chigūm ōdi gayo?  
 b \_\_\_\_\_  
 a Samushir-i ōdieyo?  
 b \_\_\_\_\_ (over there)  
 a Musūn ir-i issōyo?  
 b \_\_\_\_\_

4 Look at the following drawings. Imagine that you are teaching a child the names of the objects and, pointing at each one in turn, you say *this thing (i-gōsh-i) is...*



Now make up five more sentences, saying that this thing is *not* what you see in the picture.

5 Translate the following dialogue into English.

- a 실례합니다. 박선생님이세요?  
b 아니에요. 저는 박선생님이 아니에요. 박선생님은 중국 선생님이세요.  
여기는 중국학과 사무실이에요.  
a 아! 죄송합니다. 실례지만 한국학과는 어디예요?  
b 저기 있어요. 나도 지금 선생님 만나러 한국학과에 가요.  
a 그럼, 같이 가요.

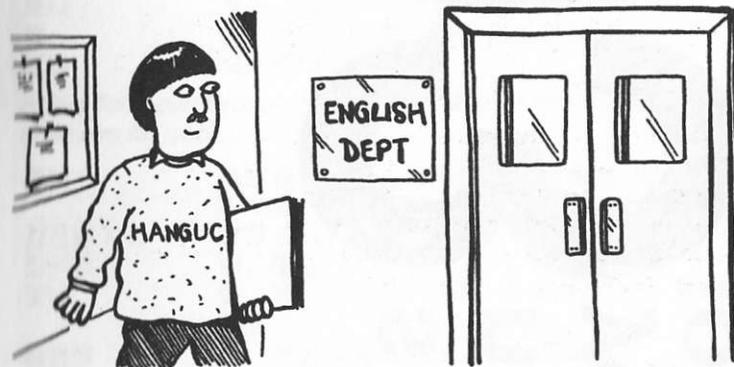
6 Make up five questions for the following five people. For the first two, ask if they are so-and-so. For the last three, ask negative questions (*you aren't so-and-so are you?*). For all five of your questions make up positive and negative answers. Make sure that you get the words for 'yes' and 'no' the right way round with the last three!

- a an American person  
b Mr Lee  
c a Chinese teacher  
d Mr Paek's son  
e a school teacher

▶ 7 Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that you should not be translating literally, but getting across the meaning with the words, phrases and constructions you have been learning.

- a I'm Pak Sangmin. *Oh, really? Pleased to meet you.*  
b How is school nowadays?  
c Excuse me, are you the Japanese teacher?  
d Waiter! Do you have any squid? *How is the squid? It's not bad.*  
e Isn't this the Korean department office? *No, it isn't.*  
f I'm not Mrs Woo. *Oh, really? I'm sorry.*  
g This is our Chinese teacher? *Really? I've heard a lot about you.*  
h Is this the Japanese shop?  
i I'm going to see the Korean teacher too.  
j I came to meet Mr Pak's wife.  
k Where is the Korean department?  
l Where is the school office?

- 8 Make up a short dialogue in which two old friends meet up and ask each other how they are getting on. One of them has his son with him and introduces the son to the other person.  
9 Kim Dukhoon is looking for the Chinese teacher in the Chinese department, but finds himself talking to the wrong person in the wrong place.



Dukhoon approaches the teacher and says:

Shillye jiman yögi-ga chungguk hakkwa samushir-ieyo?  
Chunggung mal sönsaengnim manna-rö wassöyo.

How might the teacher respond?

# 03

## Sorry, wrong number/are you ready to order yet?

In this unit you will learn

- how to make phone calls
- how to make arrangements to meet people
- about dining out in Korea
- how to ask for what you want
- how to discuss what you like and dislike
- numbers and counting
- how to say 'but'
- honorifics
- how to make suggestions and say that you can't do something

### ▶ Sorry, wrong number!

Tony is trying to contact his old Korean friend, Mr Kim, but at first he dials the wrong number.

토니 여보세요? 죄송하지만 김선생님 좀 바꿔주세요.  
 박 여기 그런 사람 없어요.  
 토니 거기 삼팔구의(에) 이오공육 아니에요?  
 박 아니에요. 전화 잘못 거셨어요.  
 토니 죄송합니다.

*At last Tony gets through, has a brief chat to Mr Kim, and arranges to meet him for lunch.*

토니 여보세요? 죄송하지만, 김선생님 좀 바꿔주세요.  
 김선생 부인 잠깐 기다리세요.  
 김선생 네. 말씀 하세요.  
 토니 아, 안녕하세요? 저는 영국대사관의 토니예요.  
 김선생 아, 안녕하세요. 오래간만이예요.  
 토니 오늘 점심에 시간 있어요?  
 김선생 네, 있어요.  
 토니 그럼, 제가 점심을 사고 싶어요.  
 김선생 네, 좋아요. 열두시에 롯데 호텔 앞에서 만납시다.  
 토니 좋아요. 그럼, 이따가 봅시다.  
 Tony Yöboseyo? Choesong ha-jiman, Kim sönsaengnim chom pakkwo-juseyo.  
 Mrs Pak Yögi kurön saram öpsöyo.  
 Tony Kögi sam-p'al-ku uy(e) i-o-kong-nyuk anieyo?  
 Mrs Pak Anieyo. Chönhwa chalmot köshyössöyo.  
 Tony Choesong hamnida.

*At last Tony gets through, has a brief chat to Mr Kim, and arranges to meet him for lunch.*

Tony Yöboseyo? Choesong ha-jiman, Kim sönsaengnim chom pakkwo-juseyo.  
 Mr Kim's wife Chamkkan kidariseyo.  
 Mr Kim Ne. Malssüm haseyo.  
 Tony A, annyöng haseyo? Chö-nun yongguk taesagwan-üy Tony-eyo.  
 Mr Kim A, annyöng haseyo. Oraeganman-ieyo.  
 Tony Onül chömsnim-e shigan-i issöyo?

Mr Kim Ne, issöyo.  
 Tony Kuröm, che-ga chömshim-ul sa-go ship'öyo.  
 Mr Kim Ne, choayo. Yöldu shi-e Lotte Hot'el ap'-esö mannaphshida.  
 Tony Choayo. Kuröm, ittaga popshida.

- 1 Who does Tony ask for?
- 2 What number did he mean to dial?
- 3 Who does Tony identify himself as?
- 4 What does Tony ask Mr Kim?
- 5 Why does he want to know this?
- 6 Where do they decide to meet?

### Phrases and expressions

choesong ha-jiman	<i>I'm sorry, but; excuse me, but . . .</i>
choesong hamnida	<i>I'm sorry; I apologize; excuse me</i>
. . . chom pakkwo-juseyo	<i>can I havespeak to . . ., please?</i>
(chönhwa) chalmot	<i>you've got the wrong number</i>
köshyössöyo	<i>(you've misdialled)</i>
(chönhwa) chalmot	<i>I've got the wrong number</i>
körössöyo	
chamkkan kidariseyo	<i>please wait a moment</i>
malssüm haseyo	<i>please speak (I'm listening!)</i>
shigan-i issöyo?	<i>do you have (free) time?</i>
(issüseyo?)	<i>(polite form)</i>
. . . -ul sago ship'öyo	<i>I want to buy . . .</i>
. . . ap'esö mannaphshida	<i>let's meet in front of . . .</i>
ittaga popshida	<i>we'll see each other later/ see you later/let's meet later</i>

yöboseyo	여보세요	hello (on the telephone)
chom	좀	a little; please (see note 2)
kürön	그런	such a, that (particular)
sam	삼	three
p'al	팔	eight
ku	구	nine
i	이	two
o	오	five
kong/yöng	공/영	zero
yuk	육	six
chönhwa	전화	telephone
chalmot	잘못	wrongly, mis-
chal	잘	well (adverb)

chamkkan 잠깐	a little (while)
kidari- 기다리-	wait
yöngguk 영국	England, British
taesagwan 대사관	embassy
-üy -의	belonging to
chömshim 점심	lunch
-e -에	at (a certain time)
shigan 시간	time, hour
che-ga 제가	I (humble form) (subject)
choh- 좋-	good (stem)
choayo 좋아요	good, fine, OK (polite style, notice the h is not pronounced)
yöi 열	ten (pure Korean number)
tu 두	two (pure Korean number)
yöldu 열두	twelve (pure Korean number)
shi -시	o'clock
hot'el 호텔	hotel
ap'esö 앞에서	in front of
manna- 만나-	meet (stem)
ittaga 이따가	in a little while
po- 보-	see, look (sometimes: meet)
pwayo 봐요	see, look (polite style, irregular)

## Grammar

### 1 Sentences with 'but'

In Unit 2 you learned shillye hamnida, and a similar form shillye-jiman, which meant *I'm sorry, but . . .* or *Excuse me, but . . .* This unit takes another verb, choesong hamnida, and puts it in the -jiman form: choesong ha-jiman, to mean *I'm sorry, but . . .* As you will have guessed, -jiman is a verb ending which means *but*, and it can be attached to any verb base.

Here are a few other verb stems you have learnt, each put into the -jiman form:

ka-	go	ka-jiman	goes, but . . .
ha-	do	ha-jiman	does, but . . .
sa-	buy	sa-jiman	buys, but . . .
isa-	is/lare, have	it-jiman	has, but . . .
mashi-	drink	mashi-jiman	drinks, but . . .
mök-	eat	mök-jiman	eats, but . . .
anj-	sit	anj-jiman	sits, but . . .

(Notice the form with *iss-*, where the double *ss* becomes pronounced as a *t* when *-jiman* is added. In Korean *han'gul* you still write the double *ss*, but the word is pronounced *itjiman*.)

Can you work out the meanings of the following sentence?

Kim sŏnsaengnim maekju chal mashi-jiman, chŏ-nun yangju chal mashyŏyo.

## 2 Making requests more polite

The word *chom* is flagged in the vocabulary as meaning *please*. It is not, however, of itself the direct equivalent of our English word 'please', because some of its uses are quite different. However, if you insert the word *chom* in a request immediately before the verb at the end of the sentence, it does have a similar effect to 'please'. It is most frequently used when asking to be given something, that is, before the verb *chu-* (*give*). In this unit you meet it in the sentence: Kim sŏnsaengnim *chom* pakkwo-juseyo (*Can I speak to Mr Kim, please*). You might use it in a sentence such as *Maekju chom chuseyo* (*Please give me some beer*). It softens the request, and consequently makes it more polite.

## 3 Numbers and counting

Korean has two completely different sets of numbers which makes things very awkward for the language learner. There is a Korean set, often called pure Korean numerals, and another set which are of Chinese origin, usually called Sino-Korean numerals. Numbers are used for counting things, and which set you use in any situation all depends on what it is that you want to count! To count hours, for example, you use the pure Korean numbers, but to count minutes, the Sino-Korean numbers must be used. You just have to learn which set of numbers are used with which objects. Taking an example from the next dialogue, someone orders two portions of something and two dishes of something else. You simply have to know that the word *portion* takes the Sino-Korean numbers (so the word for *two* is *i*), and that *dishes* takes the pure Korean numbers (so the word for *two* is *dwu*)! There is no shortcut, and we will tell you more about this as the course progresses. In this unit you will meet the Sino-Korean numbers only. They are as follows:

kong/yŏng	0				
il	1	shibil	11	ishibil	21
i	2	shibi	12	ishibi	22
sam	3	shipsam	13	ishipsam	23
sa	4	shipsa	14	(etc.)	
o	5	shibo	15		
yuk	6	shimnyuk	16		
ch'il	7	shipch'il	17		
p'al	8	shipp'al	18		
ku	9	shipku	19	ishipku	29
ship	10	iship	20	samship	30

Once you have learnt 1 to 10, everything is straightforward. Twenty is just 'two-ten', 30 'three-ten', etc.:

i-ship	20
sam-ship	30
sa-ship	40 (etc.)
ku-ship	90
paek	100
ch'ŏn	1000
man	10000

Here are a few more complicated examples for you to pick up the pattern:

ku-ship-p'al	98
o-shim-nyuk	56
paek-shib-il	111
sam-paek-p'al-ship-sa	384
i-ch'ŏn-ku-baek-chi'l-ship	2,970
sam-man-o-ch'ŏn-nyuk-baek-i-shib-o	35,625

As you will have observed, there are a number of oddities in the pronunciation of numbers when they are put together, especially concerning the number 6. However, we will always indicate these in the romanization. Just remember that the number 6 can be pronounced in any of the following ways, depending on the surrounding syllables: *yuk, yung, nyuk, nyung, ryuk, ryung, lyuk, lyung!*

Phone numbers are given in Korean by listing the digits in their Sino-Korean form. Seoul numbers have seven digits, and speakers usually give the first three, then the sound *-e*, then the

second four. In English, one might quote the STD, then say -e, then the telephone number:

352-0873	sam-o-i-e kong-p'al-ch'il-sam
966-3491	ku-ryung-nyug-e sam-sa-ku-il
01535 568326	kong-il-o-sam-o-e o-ryuk-p'al-sam-i-ryuk

#### 4 Introducing honorifics

In this unit you meet several verbs that end with *-seyo*. The ones you have seen are: *haseyo* (from *ha-*), *kidariseyo* (from *kidari-*), and *issueyo* (from *iss-*). These verbs are in what we call the polite honorific form which is shown by the ending *-seyo*. All you have to do is add *-seyo* to a verb stem which ends in a vowel, and *-useyo* to a verb stem which ends in a consonant, like this:

mashi-	mashiseyo	iss-	issueyo
ha-	haseyo	anj-	anjuseyo
kidari-	kidariseyo		

The most common use for this ending is as a polite request asking someone to do something, e.g. *please (do it)*, so that *kidariseyo* means *please wait*. Notice that we've called the ending the polite honorific. You've met the polite ending *-yo* before, and this ending also has it, hence the name polite honorific. But it also has an *-s-* in it, which is the honorific bit. This serves to honour the person you are talking to, that is, the person you are requesting to do whatever it is. It is a form of respect, and it is this honorific part that makes the ending *-(u)seyo* into a polite request.

Although for the next few units this is the most common use you will meet for the polite honorific, there is another way in which it can be used, either to ask a question of somebody you particularly esteem, respect or wish to honour, or simply to make a statement about them. Thus the sentence *Kimsönsaengnim-i hakkyo-e kaseyo* means *Mr Kim is going to school*, and shows special respect or honour to Mr Kim. You will meet this usage in the next dialogue.

For now you should make sure that you are completely happy with the polite request meaning, but also be aware of the other use in the back of your mind, since these honorifics are something that we shall return to later on.

#### 5 Saying what you want to do

The form *-ko ship'öyo* (the form *ship'öyo* coming from the stem *ship'-*) can be added onto any verb stem which describes an action, to produce the meaning *want to (verb)*. Thus *na-nun mök-ko ship'öyo* means *I want to eat*. The *-ko* attaches straight to the verb stem, whether it ends in a consonant or a vowel, and there are no irregularities other than that the *k* of the *-ko* becomes pronounced as a *g* after vowels, as you would expect. Note that you can't put any other words between the *-ko* and the *ship'öyo* parts. Treat them as if they are inseparable, even though there is a space between them. Here are a couple of examples:

mök-	eat	chö-nun chömshim mök-ko ship'öyo
		<i>I want to eat lunch</i>
manna-	meet	Jinyang manna-go ship'öyo
		<i>I want to meet Jinyang</i>

#### 6 Making suggestions

A final verb ending pattern to learn from this dialogue is *-(u)pshida*. *-pshida* is added onto a verb stem ending in a vowel, and *-upshida* is added if the verb stem ends in a consonant. This pattern of using the vowel *u* to add to nouns or verb stems that end in consonants is one that you are becoming familiar with. The example you have seen is the ending *(ü)seyo*, but the topic particle *(n)ün* is similar. You will meet many, many examples as you work through this book.

The meaning of *(ü)pshida* is *let's do (such-and-such)*, and it is a relatively polite or formal form, as opposed to something you would say in a very informal or colloquial conversation. Note once again that you can only add this form onto a verb which describes an action, just as you saw with *-ko ship'öyo*. Thus you can say 'let's go for a walk', since that describes an action, but you can't say 'let's be pretty' using *-(ü)pshida*, since being pretty is a state and not an action. Here are a couple of examples of the form:

Yöldu shi-e kach'i	<i>Let's go to town together at 12</i>
shinae-e kapshida	
Ümryosu mashipshida	<i>Let's have a drink</i>

**i** The first dialogue was all about arranging to meet up for lunch, and this is a common enough Korean habit, just as it is in the West. You will actually find that Koreans tend to eat out a little more often than westerners, and also that eating out can be done more cheaply in Korea. In the West we tend to eat out for special occasions or for a treat and, of course, Koreans do this too and are prepared to spend quite a bit of money to do so. But on more normal, everyday occasions they will also often take an ordinary meal out and this can be done quite cheaply.

When eating out with Koreans, it is very rare to 'go dutch' and split the bill as we might among friends in our culture. In Korea it is normally one person who pays the bill, either the person who has done the inviting, or the most senior figure (in age or status). It is generally regarded as the senior person's job to pay for everyone else, and you must not offend Koreans by insisting on breaking their cultural tradition. After all, everyone ends up being the senior party at some time or other, so everything works out fairly in the end!

## ▶ Are you ready to order yet?

Tony and Mr Kim meet up and go to a restaurant for lunch. They order drinks, and then have a discussion about their culinary likes and dislikes.

**종업원** 어서 오세요. 이 쪽으로 앉으세요.  
**김선생** 고맙습니다.  
**종업원** 음료수 하시겠어요?  
**김선생** 우선 맥주 좀 주세요.  
**김선생** 한국 음식 좋아 하세요?  
**토니** 네, 아주 좋아 하지만, 매운 거 잘 못 먹어요.  
**김선생** 그럼 불고기나 갈비를 먹읍시다.  
**토니** 네, 좋아요. 그리고 저는 냉면도 먹고 싶어요.

*The waitress arrives to take their food order.*

**종업원** 주문 하시겠어요?  
**토니** 불고기 이인분하고 냉면 두 그릇 주세요.  
**종업원** 물냉면 드릴까요? 비빔냉면 드릴까요?  
**토니** 물냉면 주세요.

*A little while later the waitress arrives with the food.*

**종업원** 맛있게 드세요!

*During the meal, to the waitress:*

**토니** 아가씨, 물하고 김치 좀 더 주세요.

**Chongöpwon** Ösö oseyo. I cchog-uro anjuseyo.  
**Mr Kim** Komapsumnida.  
**Chongöpwon** Ümryosu hashigessöyo?  
**Mr Kim** Usön maekju chom chuseyo.  
**Mr Kim** Hanguk ümshik choa haseyo?  
**Tony** Ne, aju choa ha-jiman, maeun kö chal mon mögöyo.  
**Mr Kim** Küröm pulgogi-na kalbi-rul mögüpsida.  
**Tony** Ne, choayo. Kürigo chö-nun naengmyön-do mök-ko ship'öyo.

*The waitress arrives to take their food order.*

**Chongöpwon** Chumun hashigessöyo?  
**Tony** Pulgogi i-inbun-hago naengmyön tu kürüt chuseyo.

**Chongöpwon** Mul naengmyön türilkkayo? Pibim naengmyön türilkkayo?  
**Tony** Mul naengmyön chuseyo.

*A little while later the waitress arrives with the food.*

**Chongöpwon** Mashikke tuseyo!

*During the meal, to the waitress:*

**Tony** Agassi, mul-hago kimch'i chom tö chuseyo.

- 1 Do they order wine?
- 2 What does Tony think about Korean food?
- 3 Tony is content with Kim's suggestion. True or false?
- 4 What does Tony ask the waitress for?

## Phrases and expressions

ösö oseyo  
 i cchog-uro anjuseyo

komapsumnida  
 ümryosu hashigessöyo?

chumun hashigessöyo?  
 ... türilkkayo?

welcome!  
 please sit over here (over this side)  
 thank you  
 would you like something to drink?  
 would you like to order?  
 would you like ... (lit.: shall I give you ...)

chongöpwön 종업원	waiter, assistant (remember <i>ajossi</i> is the term to call him over)
cchok 쪽	side
-(u)ro -(으)로	towards, in the direction of
anj- 앉-	sit (stem)
ümryosu 음료수	drink
usön 우선	first
ümshik 음식	food
choa ha- 좋아하-	like (stem)
aju 아주	very
maeun 매운	spicy (adj)
kö 거	thing, object, fact (abbreviation of <i>köt</i> , spelt <i>kös</i> )
mot 못	cannot (nb <i>mot</i> + <i>m-</i> = <i>mon m-</i> )
pulgogi 불고기	<i>pulgogi</i> , Korean spiced marinated beef
-na -나	or (particle)
kalbi 갈비	marinated and fried spare ribs (usually pork, cheaper than <i>pulgogi</i> )
naengmyön 냉면	thin noodles with vegetables
chumun ha- 주문하-	order (stem)
i 이	two
-inbun -인분	portion
tu 두	two (pure Korean number)
kürüt 그릇	dish/bowl
mul- 물-	water
mul naengmyön 물 냉면	thin noodles in cold soup (spicy and refreshing!)
pibim 비빔	mixed
türilkkayo 드릴까요	would you like? (lit.: shall I give you?)
agassi 아가씨	waitress! (lit.: girl, unmarried woman)
kimch'i 김치	classic Korean side dish, marinated cabbage, spiced strongly with chillies
tö 더	more

## Grammar

### 1 Choayo and choa haeyo

There is an important difference between these two verbs. Choayo is a kind of verbal adjective which means 'is good'. It may by implication mean that you like it, but the root meaning is that something is good. It is important to see the distinction, and here is an example to illustrate the difference. Kimch'i choayo means that the kimch'i is good. You might conceivably recognize it as being good kimch'i (as far as kimch'i goes . . .) without actually wanting to say that you like it. Even if you hate kimch'i, you might still be able to discern between good and bad examples.

Contrariwise, choa haeyo means 'like'. Kimch'i choa haeyo means that you, or whoever else is being spoken about, actually likes the stuff. It might be the case that you like kimch'i, even if it's not quite at its best. You can say you like something without commenting on its relative quality.

Can you explain the difference, therefore, between Kimsönsaengnim choayo and Kimsönsaengnim choa haeyo?

The first means that Mr Kim is a good man, a good guy. The second means that you (or whoever) actually likes him.

### 2 Or

-na can be added after a noun to mean 'or', just like -hago can be added after nouns to mean 'and'. (noun)-na (noun), therefore, means (noun) or (noun). Kalbi-na pulgogi mögüpsida means 'let's eat kalbi or pulgogi'.

You can make this *either . . . or* idea sound even more vague by adding -na to both nouns. Then the translation would be something like 'let's eat kalbi or pulgogi or something'. In a similar way you can have just one noun plus -na to make the sentence more vague so that it means '(noun) or something'. Take the sentence kalbi-na mögüpsida. This would mean that you are not all that bothered about what exactly you eat, you are just suggesting kalbi. Something else might be just as acceptable.

### 3 When you can't do it

The little word **mot** can be added to a sentence to give the meaning that something cannot be done: **shinae-e mot kayo** (*I can't go to the city centre*). Note that your inability to do something is being described – you can't do it, rather than that you aren't able to or you won't. If you simply choose not to go to the city, or if you aren't going, don't want to go or refuse to go, you can't use this construction. It expresses impossibility. Whether you want to go or not, you can't.

The word **mot** goes as close to the verb as possible, right near the end of the clause immediately before the verb.

Watch out for the sound change that occurs at the end of **mot** when the verb following begins with an **m**. **Mot plus manna-** gives **mon mannayo**. (*I can't meet*).

### 4 Measuring and counting

We will have a detailed section on measuring and counting later on, but for now notice the two patterns in this lesson which will give you the key:

pulgogi	i	inbun
naengmyŏn	tu	kŭrŭt
(noun)	(number)	(measure)

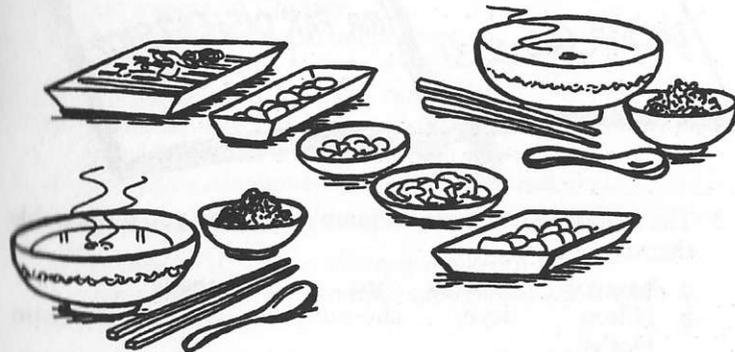
This is important. First you state the substance you are measuring, then the number you want, then the unit that you are measuring it by (here portions and dishes).

**i** Lotte Hotel is one of the famous buildings in Seoul, and is situated right next to the Lotte Department Store (Korea's biggest) between Myŏngdong and Shich'ŏng (City Hall). Lotte is one of Korea's **chaebŏl** or large conglomerates.

A Korean department store is a little different from its western equivalent. It contains literally hundreds of sales assistants (mainly female), with at least one on every single counter throughout the store. At first it can seem as though you're under pressure to buy, but this isn't really the case any more so than in the West, and you soon get used to it!

This lesson also introduced two famous Korean foods. **Kimch'i** is the marinated pickled cabbage – very spicy with lots of chilli powder – eaten as a side dish with virtually every Korean meal. There are certain other varieties, like **mul kimch'i** or water kimch'i which is

less spicy and consists of kimch'i in liquid, and **mu kimch'i** which is made of white radish (**mu**) instead of cabbage. You also met **naengmyŏn** which is a kind of clear, thin noodle, rather like vermicelli, usually eaten in a cold soup as **mul naengmyŏn**. It is spicy (and is one of the few Korean dishes to contain mustard or something similar to it), but is extremely refreshing in the hot summer as it is served with lots of ice. **Pibim naengmyŏn** is another form, without water this time, and mixed with other vegetables.



### Practice

Additional vocabulary for these exercises is as follows.

shiktang 식당	restaurant
paekhwajŏm 백화점	department store
wain 와인	wine
mal ha- 말하-	speak, say

1 Make up a sentence for each of the following sets of information, saying that you want to do A and B. For example, for the first, your Korean sentence will say 'I want to meet Mr Pak and Mrs Kim'.

a	Mr Pak	Mrs Kim	meet
b	bread	fruit	buy
c	pulgogi	kalbi	eat
d	English teacher	Japanese teacher	wait for
e	beer	whisky	drink
f	octopus	naengmyŏn	order

Now repeat the exercise, saying that you want to do either A or B.

- 2 The following is an excerpt from a page in someone's telephone book. Write out the names of each person and their number, in Korean script and in romanization (*doctor: uysa*).



- 3 The following sentences are jumbled up. Can you unscramble them?

- |             |          |             |           |         |
|-------------|----------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| a haseyo?   | ümshik   | choa        | hanguk    |         |
| b Hilton    | ieyo     | chö-nun     | -uy       | Sangmin |
|             | Hot'el   |             |           |         |
| c ap'esö    | hakkyo   | mannapshida | yölshi-e  |         |
| d onül      | shigan-i | chömsnim    | issuseyo? | -e      |
| e mul       | chuseyo  | usön        | chom      |         |
| f mögöyo    | maeun    | chal        | kö        | mot     |
| g naengmyön | kalbi    | tu-kürüt    | saminbun  | chuseyo |
|             |          |             | -hago     |         |

- 4 Change the following sentences to say that they can't be done. For example, for the first you will write a Korean sentence saying that you can't go to the Japanese embassy.

- I'm going to the Japanese embassy.
- Chigüm chömsnim mög-üro shiktang-e kayo.
- Jaemin-ssi, Sangmin-ssi kidariseyo?
- Sangmin eats spicy food.
- I am meeting Mrs Jang in front of the Chinese embassy.
- Paekhwajöm-e kayo.

- 5 Put the following verbs into the polite honorific form (ending in -seyo), and also into the 'let's do' form. Then make up four sentences, two with each of the two verb forms (you can use any verbs you want to make the sentences).

- |        |        |       |
|--------|--------|-------|
| a 가-   | d 앉-   | f 사-  |
| b 주문하- | e 기다리- | g 만나- |
| c 보-   |        |       |

- 6 What is the difference between the following two pairs of sentences?

- |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a I-kalbi-ga aju choayo.          | I-kalbi-rul aju choa haeyo.         |
| b Pak sönsaengnim-üy adul choayo. | Pak sönsaengnim-üy adul choa haeyo. |

- 7 The following sentences should be translated into Korean. They are intended to practise suggestions and also how to say 'but'.

- Let's speak in Chinese.
- Let's go to the department store.
- Let's drink some beer or wine.
- I want to go to America, but I can't.
- I like whisky but I can't drink it. (implication: it isn't good for me or it makes me too drunk!)
- I want to telephone Mr Kim, but I misdialled.

- 8 What are the following numbers in English?

- |                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| a kuship-ch'il. | d p'albaeng-nyukship-il.          |
| b oship-sam.    | e samman-sach'on-sabaek-kushib-o. |
| c ibaek-ch'il.  |                                   |

- 9 Translate the following sentences into English.

- 매운 거 좋아하지만 한국음식 잘못 먹어요.
- 실례지만 영국 대사관이 어디 있어요?
- 이쪽으로 앉으세요. 음료수 하시겠어요?
- 시간이 있으세요? 그럼 이따가 만납시다.
- 김선생님? 잠깐 기다리세요. 죄송하지만 여기 그런 사람 없어요. 잘못 거셨어요.
- 거기 (팔옥삼의 공오사이에요)?

- 10 You are arranging to meet your friend. She asks you where you should meet. Answer her, suggesting a place and a time.



# 04

## how much is it altogether?/ finding the way

In this unit you will learn

- simple shopping
- finding your way around
- more about negation
- how to say 'if'
- use of the direct object particle
- how to say where something is and where some activity takes place
- more numbers and money in Korean
- basic use of classifiers when counting things

### ▶ How much is it all together?

Chris goes to a Korean bookstore to buy some dictionaries and unfortunately has a little trouble over the price.

- 철원            월 찾으세요?  
크리스        사전 있어요?  
철원            네. 한영 사전 드릴까요?  
크리스        네, 한영 사전하고 영한사전 둘 다 주세요.  
철원            여기 있어요.  
크리스        얼마예요?  
철원            한 권에 만원씩, 모두 이만 원이에요.  
크리스        한자 사전도 있어요?  
철원            한자 사전은 세 가지 종류가 있어요.  
크리스        제일 싼 거 주세요.  
철원            잠깐 기다리세요... 여기 있어요.  
크리스        고맙습니다. 모두 얼마예요?  
철원            한자 사전 삼만 원... 그러니까 모두 오만 원이에요.  
크리스        제일 싼 게 삼만 원이에요? 그럼, 제일 비싼 건 얼마예요?  
                  십만 원이에요?  
철원            아! 죄송합니다. 착각했어요.  
                  모두 삼만 원이에요. 영수증도 드릴까요?  
크리스        네, 주세요.  
철원            알겠습니다. 여기 있어요. 안녕히 가세요!  
크리스        안녕히 계세요.
- Chōmwon     Mwol ch'ajūseyo?  
Chris         Sajōn issōyo?  
Chōmwon     Ne. Han-yōng sajōn tūrilkkayo?  
Chris         Ne han-yōng sajōn-hago yōng-han sajōn tul ta chuseyo.  
Chōmwon     Yōgi issōyo.  
Chris         Ōlma-eyo?  
Chōmwon     Han kwon-e man won-ssik, modu i-man won-ieyo.  
Chris         Hanja sajōn-do issōyo?  
Chōmwon     Hanja sajōn-un se kaji chongnyu-ga issōyo.  
Chris         Cheil ssan kō chuseyo.  
Chōmwon     Chamkkan kidariseyo... yōgi issōyo.  
Chris         Komapsumnida. Modu ōlmaeyo?  
Chōmwon     Hanja sajōn sam-man won... kurōnikka modu o-man won-ieyo.

**Chris** Cheil ssan ke sam-man won-ieyo? Kūrōm, cheil pissan kōn ōlma-eyo? Shim-man won-ieyo?!  
**Chōmwon** A! Choesong hamnida. Ch'akkak haessōyo. Modu sam-man won-ieyo. Yōngsujūng-do tūrilkkayo?  
**Chris** Ne, chuseyo.  
**Chōmwon** Algessūmnida. Yōgi issōyo. Annyōngghi kaseyo!  
**Chris** Annyōngghi kyeseyo.

- 1 How many dictionaries does Chris want to buy?
- 2 How much are the first two volumes?
- 3 What choice is he later offered?
- 4 What kind of Chinese character dictionary does he require?
- 5 Whose fault is the confusion over cost?
- 6 What sarcastic remark does Chris make?

### Phrases and expressions

**mwol ch'ajūseyo?** *what are you looking for? can I help you?*  
**(modu) ōlmaeyo?** *how much is it (all together)?*  
**algessūmnida** *I understand; okay, right, fine (formally)*  
**ch'akkak haessoyo** *I have made a mistake*  
**annyōngghi kaseyo** *goodbye (to someone who is leaving)*  
**annyōngghi kyeseyo** *goodbye (to someone who is staying)*

<b>mwol</b> <b>몇</b>	<i>what (object form)</i>
<b>ch'aj-</b> <b>찾-</b>	<i>look for</i>
<b>sajōn</b> <b>사전</b>	<i>dictionary</i>
<b>han-yōng</b> <b>한-영</b>	<i>Korean-English</i>
<b>yōng-han</b> <b>영-한</b>	<i>English-Korean</i>
<b>tul</b> <b>둘</b>	<i>two (when you mean 'the two of them', 'both')</i>
<b>ōlma</b> <b>얼마</b>	<i>how much</i>
<b>han</b> <b>한</b>	<i>one (pure Korean, when used with a counter or measure word)</i>
<b>kwon</b> <b>권</b>	<i>volume (measure word)</i>
<b>man</b> <b>만</b>	<i>10,000</i>
<b>won</b> <b>원</b>	<i>won (unit of Korean currency)</i>
<b>-ssik</b> <b>-씩</b>	<i>each, per (see note 3)</i>
<b>modu</b> <b>모두</b>	<i>all together, everything, everyone</i>
<b>hanja</b> <b>한자</b>	<i>Chinese characters</i>
<b>se</b> <b>세</b>	<i>three (pure Korean)</i>
<b>kaji</b> <b>가지</b>	<i>kind, example (counter for the noun chongnyu)</i>

<b>chongnyu</b> <b>종류</b>	<i>type, sort, kind</i>
<b>cheil</b> <b>제일</b>	<i>the most</i>
<b>ssan</b> <b>싼</b>	<i>cheap (adjective)</i>
<b>ssa-</b> <b>싸-</b>	<i>is cheap</i>
<b>kūrōnikka</b> <b>그러니까</b>	<i>therefore, because of that</i>
<b>pissan</b> <b>비싼</b>	<i>expensive (adjective)</i>
<b>pissa-</b> <b>비싸-</b>	<i>is expensive</i>
<b>kōn</b> <b>건</b>	<i>thing, object (abbrev of kōt 것 + topic particle)</i>
<b>ch'akkak ha-</b> <b>착각하-</b>	<i>make a mistake</i>
<b>yōngsujūng</b> <b>영수증</b>	<i>receipt</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Counters

In English, we sometimes use counters (counting words) to count objects. We might say for example two *cups* of coffee, or three *packets* of soup. Cups and packets are counters or measures by which we count and measure things like coffee and soup. On other occasions we do not use counters, for example we say two books, three houses. However, in Korean, counters are frequently used when English does not use them. To say the two previous sentences, for example, a Korean might say:

ch'aek tu kwon    *book two volumes*    *two books*  
 chip se ch'ae    *house three buildings*    *three houses*

This is the usual pattern in Korean for counting things, or for talking about a certain number of something. Here are some common Korean counters which take the Sino-Korean numbers you have already learned:

<b>pun</b>	<i>minute</i>	<b>sam pun</b>	<i>three minutes</i>
<b>ch'o</b>	<i>second</i>	<b>iship ch'o</b>	<i>twenty seconds</i>
<b>il</b>	<i>day</i>	<b>samshib il</b>	<i>thirty days</i>
<b>nyōn</b>	<i>year</i>	<b>sa nyōn</b>	<i>four years</i>
<b>ch'ūng</b>	<i>floors (in building)</i>	<b>sam ch'ūng</b>	<i>three floors, third floor</i>
<b>won</b>	<i>won (Korean money)</i>	<i>(etc.)</i>	
<b>myōng</b>	<i>person</i>		

Note that the word *myōng* can also be used with pure Korean numbers.

You can ask how many of something there are with the word *myōt* (spelt *myōch'*), for example: *myōn-myōng?* *myōn-nyōn?* *myōt-pun?*

This is not to say that Korean always uses counters. There are some words which do not take a special counter, that is to say, the word itself is the counter, as it is in English with books and houses. Thus, for counting days with *il* (*day*) you don't need to say *il sam il*. In fact, that would be wrong. You simply say *sam il*. If a counter is not used, therefore, the number comes before what it is that you are counting, instead of after it.

## 2 Pure Korean numbers

You now need to know the pure Korean numbers. We teach you up to 49. If you need more than that, you can simply use the Sino-Korean numbers instead. In fact, there are no pure Korean numbers above 99, and so Sino-Korean numbers have to be used for 100 and over. For smaller numbers, however (say, below 50), it is important to know the pure Korean numbers and to use them when they are required, since otherwise you will be easily misunderstood (or not understood at all!) by Koreans.

han(a)	1	yōlhan(a)	11
tu(l)	2	yōldu(l)	12
se(t)	3	yōlse(t)	13
ne(t)	4		
tasot	5		
yōsōt	6		
ilgop	7		
yōdōl	8		
ahop	9		
yōl	10	sūmu(l)	20
		sōrūn	30
		mahūn	40

The letters in brackets are only used when the number is not followed by a noun or a counter to which it refers.

Most counters are used with pure Korean numbers, so with the exception of those you have already learnt which take

Sino-Korean numbers, you are safe to use pure Korean numbers. Here are some examples of common counters which are used with pure Korean numbers:

shi	<i>o'clock</i>
shigan	<i>hours (duration)</i>
sal	<i>years of age</i>
saram	<i>person</i>
pun	<i>person (honorific)</i>
mari	<i>animal</i>
kwon	<i>volume (for books)</i>
chan	<i>cup(ful)</i>
sangja	<i>box</i>
pyōng	<i>bottle</i>

## 3 Prices

This lesson introduces you to a construction for saying how much things cost, using the word *ssik*, which is difficult to translate, but gives the sentence the flavour of so much each, so much apiece, or so much *per* such and such a quantity. Study the following sentences to see how it is used:

han kwon-e man won-ssik	<i>10,000 won per book (volume)</i>
sagwa o-baek won-ssik	<i>apples 500 won each</i>
sagwa han sangja-e ch'ōn won-ssik	<i>apples 1,000 won a box</i>

To make sentences out of these, all you have to do is add the copula:

Sagwa-ga o-baek won-ssig-ieyo	<i>Apples are 500 won each</i>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------

## 4 Introducing adjectives

You have now met several Korean words that function in the way that adjectives do in English. In Korean they are usually called modifiers, but they work rather like adjectives. Remember that they always come before the noun they describe. Here are the ones you have met so far, with a couple of extras thrown in:

pissan	<i>expensive</i>
ssan	<i>cheap</i>
kūrōn	<i>such a, that (kind of)</i>
maeun	<i>spicy</i>
choūn	<i>good</i>
nappūn	<i>bad</i>

You'll notice that they all end in *n*, and in a later lesson you will learn how they can be formed from their associated verbs.

One very common construction in Korean is to find these words before the noun *kōt*, which means *thing* (and sometimes also *fact* or *object*). This noun *kōt* itself needs a little explanation, as it commonly occurs in several different forms. On its own the word is pronounced *kōt*, but written *kōs* (remember your pronunciation rules!). It is sometimes abbreviated to *kō*. With the topic particle its form is *kōs-un*, or, in casual speech, *kōn*. With the subject particle its form is *kōsh-i* (pronunciation rules!), but it is often shortened to *ke*.

An example of the noun *kōt* with an adjective would be: *ssan ke* or *ssan kōsh-i*, which mean *the cheap thing*, or, more commonly, *the cheap one*. You might put these into sentences as follows:

*chō-nun pissan kō choa haeyo*    *I like expensive things*  
*kūrōn kō mon mōgōyo*        *I can't eat that (kind of) thing*

## 5 Superlatives

You can easily make superlatives in Korean (e.g. the most expensive, the most pretty, the best, the fastest) by putting the word *cheil* before the adjective/modifier:

*cheil maeun ūmshik*    *the most spicy food, the spiciest food*  
*cheil pissan ke*        *the most expensive (thing) [subject]*  
*cheil choūn saram*    *the best person*

## 6 Linking words

In continuous speech, Korean likes to show the way that sentences relate to each other by using linking words to begin consecutive sentences. In English we are encouraged not to begin sentences with 'but', 'and' and similar words, but Korean does this sort of thing a lot and it is good style. It makes your Korean sound natural. Here are the most common examples:

*kūrōna*                    *but (whereas)*  
*kūrōch'iman*            *but*  
*kūrigo*                    *and*  
*kūrōnde*                 *however, but*  
*kūrōnikka*              *therefore, that being so*  
*kūrōm*                    *so, therefore (more colloquial)*

## 7 Saying goodbye

You will see from the dialogue that Korean has two ways for saying goodbye. *Annyōngghi kaseyo* is used to say goodbye to someone who is leaving (i.e. about to walk or go away) and *annyōngghi kyeseyo* is used to say goodbye to someone who is staying there, while the person saying it is going. Sometimes both speakers will be going off of course, so in that case both would say *annyōngghi kaseyo*. It sounds a bit tricky at first, admittedly, but once you get used to the idea it's really quite simple. All you have to think about is who is leaving and who is staying. *Annyōngghi* means *in peace*, so *annyōngghi kaseyo* means 'go in peace' (from *ka-*, *go*), and *annyōngghi kyeseyo* means 'stay in peace' (made, surprisingly enough, from the honorific form of the verb *iss-*, *exist, stay*).

## Chinese characters

In the days before the Korean alphabet was invented, all writing in Korea was done in Chinese characters and then only by an elite that knew how. Even many years after King Sejong's great invention, Chinese characters still remained the most common way of writing for the educated, and it was not until the end of the 19th century that the Korean script began to grow in popularity.

Chinese characters are very complex and there are thousands of different ones, all of which have to be learnt. Fortunately you do not need to do this for your studies in Korean. However, many Korean newspapers use some Chinese characters interspersed within the Korean text and educated Koreans are expected to know around 1,000 characters which are recommended by the Korean education authorities. Unless you wish to be a scholar in Oriental studies, you can survive perfectly well with no knowledge of characters and should you wish to read a Korean newspaper you can buy one which does not use them. It is then only academic and technical books that will be off-limits to you.

Out of interest, the following shows an extract from an academic book which uses both the Korean script and Chinese characters.

그러나, 이러한 부정적인 경향의 평가만으로 廉想涉의 후기소설의 서술방법상의 두드러진 특징들을 다 설명했다고 할 수는 없다. 비록 후기소설에 대한 총체적 평가가 부정적인 쪽으로 쏠려버렸다 해도 그의 한 편의 소설 혹은 여러 편의 소설에 주목할 만하고 본뜬 만한 긍정적 서술방법이 숨어 있을 가능성을 외면할 수는 없기 때문이다.

우선, 앞서 인용한 바 있는 단문 <나와 自然主義>에서 廉想涉이 후진들에게 「말과 글을 배울 것」을 권고했던 것을 상기해볼 필요가 있다. 여기에서 「寫實主義를 研究할 것」이라는 권고를 덧붙인 것을 보면, 그는 후진들에게 자신 있고 능력 있다고 생각하는 내용을 권장한 것임이 분명해진다. 우선, 廉想涉은 한 편의 소설을 만들어가는 과정에 있어서 최소한 「문장」에는 자신감을 가졌다. 廉想涉의 후기소설의 경우, 문제는 이렇듯 자신감에 넘친 문장력이 날카로우면서도 깊이 있는 주제의식과 잘 어울릴 기회를 갖지 못한 데 있다. 문장력은 작가로서의 관록과 비례되는 것이나, 사상이니 주제의식이니 하는 것은 그렇지 않다.

## ▶ Finding the way

Mr Pak needs to find a bank to get some money changed, but he has a few problems finding what he is looking for.

박선생 실례합니다. 이근처에 은행이 어디 있어요?

은행원 A 저 우체국에서 왼쪽으로 가면 상업 은행이 있어요.

박선생 고맙습니다.

At the counter in Sangöp bank.

박선생 영국 돈을 한국 돈으로 좀 바꾸고 싶어요.

은행원 B 우리 은행은 외환 업무를 안 해요. 한국 외환 은행으로 가세요.

박선생 한국 외환 은행이 어디 있어요?

은행원 B 종로 쪽으로 가세요. 종로 사거리에서 오른쪽으로 가면 한국 외환 은행 지점이 있어요.

박선생 여기서 멀어요?

은행원 B 아니요. 걸어서 오 분 정도 걸려요

Mr Pak Shillye hamnida. I-kunch'ö-e ünhaeng-i ödi issöyo?

Unhaengwon A Chö uch'egug-esö oencchog-uro ka-myön sangöp unhaeng-i issöyo.

Mr Pak Komapsumnida.

At the counter in Sangöp bank.

Mr Pak Yöngguk ton-ul hanguk ton-uro chom pakku-go ship'öyo.

Unhaengwon B Uri ünhaeng-un oehwan ömmu-rul an haeyo. Hanguk oehwan ünhaeng-uro kaseyo.

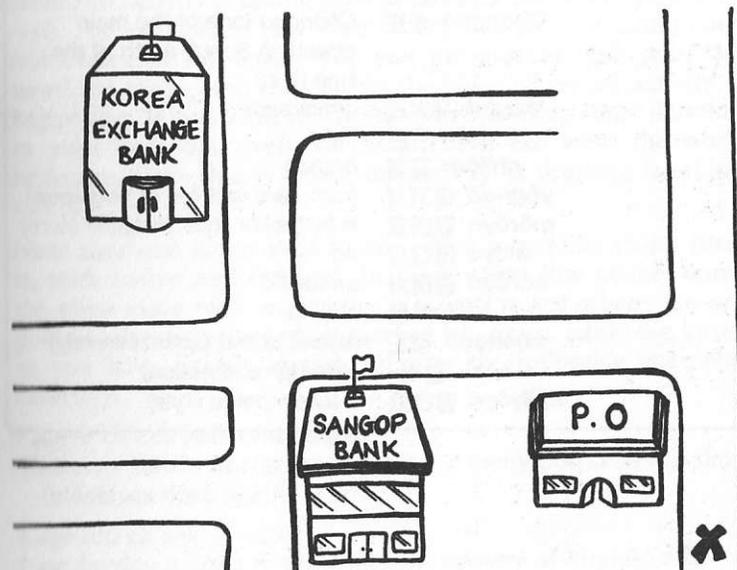
Mr Pak Hanguk oehwan ünhaeng-i ödi issöyo?

Unhaengwon B Chongno cchog-uro kaseyo. Chongno sagöri-esö orun cchog-uro ka-myön Hanguk oehwan ünhaeng chijöm-i issöyo.

Mr Pak Yögi-sö möröyo?

Unhaengwon B Aniyö. Körsö o pun chöngdo kölyöyo.

- 1 Where is the Sangöp bank?
- 2 What service is required?
- 3 What is the problem?
- 4 Where is the other bank located?



i- 이-	<i>this one (+ noun), this (noun)</i>
künch'ö 근처	<i>district, area, vicinity</i>
ünhaeng 은행	<i>bank</i>
ünhaengwon 은행원	<i>bank clerk</i>
chö- 저-	<i>that one (a long way away, old English 'yon')</i>
kü- 그-	<i>that one (nearer than cho)</i>
uch'eguk 우체국	<i>post office</i>
-esö -에서	<i>location particle (place in which something happens); from</i>
oen 왼	<i>left</i>
(verb)-myön -면	<i>if (verb) (clause ending)</i>
sangöp 상업	<i>trade</i>
Sangöp Ünhaeng 상업은행	<i>Commercial Bank (lit.: trade bank)</i>
ch'angu 창구	<i>window, cashier window</i>
ton 돈	<i>money</i>
-(r)ul -을/를	<i>(direct object particle)</i>
oehwan 외환	<i>exchange</i>
ömmu 업무	<i>business, service</i>
an 안	<i>not (used to make verbs negative)</i>
(Hangwuk) Oehwan Ünhaeng 외환은행	<i>Korea Exchange Bank</i>
Chongno 종로	<i>Chongno (one of the main streets in Seoul, north of the Han river)</i>
sagöri 사거리	<i>crossroads</i>
orün 오른	<i>right</i>
chijöm 지점	<i>branch</i>
yögi-sö 여기서	<i>from here (abbrev of yogi-eso)</i>
möröyo 멀어요	<i>is far (polite style, irregular stem)</i>
aniyo 아니요	<i>no</i>
körösö 걸어서	<i>on foot</i>
pun 분	<i>minute</i>
chöngdo 정도	<i>extent, about (approximately)</i>
köllli- 걸리-	<i>takes (time duration)</i>
kölllyöyo 걸려요	<i>it takes (polite style)</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Directions

The particle *-(u)ro* is used to indicate direction towards. It won't surprise you to learn that the form *-uro* is added to nouns that end with consonants and *-ro* to nouns that end with a vowel. The meaning, then, is *towards, in the direction of*, and therefore it usually occurs with verbs of going and coming.

Another meaning is *into* (another shape or form), and the most important use for that is the one you meet in the dialogue, changing money from one currency *into* another one.

### 2 Saying 'from', and saying where something happens

The particle *-esö* on the end of nouns means *from* (a place). It could be used in the following circumstances, for example:

From the bank (*-esö*) to the post office (*-kkaji*) takes 10 minutes  
I've come from the embassy (*esö*): *taesagwan-esö wassöyo*

There is another important (and slightly more complicated) use of *-esö*, in addition to this meaning. When you are describing where an activity is taking place, you mark the place noun with *-esö*. For example, if you want to say that you are doing your homework in the study, you put the particle *-esö* onto the word for study. *-esö* thus marks the place where an activity is happening. If you want to say that you are doing some drawing in your bedroom, you put the particle *-esö* onto the word bedroom, since that is where the activity of drawing is taking place.

Note that *-esö* is not used to say where something exists (that is, with *issöyo* and *öpsöyo*). In those cases, you simply mark the place noun with *-e*. Neither is it used to say where you are going to (motion towards is marked by *-e*, e.g. *hakkyo-e kayo*, as you have already learnt). Observe the following examples carefully:

Kage-e ch'aek issöyo/manhayo

*There are books in the shop/There are many books in the shop*  
(existence once again)

Kage-esö ch'aek-ul sayo

*I am buying a book in the shop* (the activity of buying)

Shiktang-esõ mannaphshida

*Let's meet in the restaurant* (the activity of meeting)

Shiktang-e kayo

*I'm going to the restaurant* (motion towards the restaurant, going or coming)

Thus, -e is used with verbs of motion towards (coming and going), and to speak about the existence or non-existence of something in a particular place. -eso is used to say where an activity is taking place, or to mean *from*.

### 3 'If' clauses

The verb ending -(u)myõn (-umyõn after verb stems ending in consonants, otherwise -myõn) can be added to the stem of any verb to make an if clause. The half of the sentence that comes before the -myõn is the part that is governed by the 'if'. This is best illustrated by example:

Chongno chhog-uro ka-myõn ãnhaeng-i issõyo

*If you go in the direction of Chõngno, there is a bank*

Sõnsaengnim maekju chumun ha-myõn, na-do maekju chumun haeyo

*If you (sir) order a beer, I'll order one too*

Kim sõnsaengnim ch'aj-ũmyõn chõ-cchog-uro kaseyo

*If you're looking for Mr Kim, go that way*

### 4 The object particle

The direct object of a sentence is the bit of the sentence that gets something done to it by the subject or the actor in the sentence. This is best understood by examples. In the following sentences the objects are in bold type:

I want to drink a beer (what you, the subject, want to drink, the object, a beer)

He's playing cricket (what he, the subject, wants to play, the object, cricket)

Don't watch television all the time! (what you, the implied subject, want to watch, the object, TV)

Korean often marks the objects in its sentences by adding the object particle to the noun which is the object of the sentence. The object particle is -rul after a vowel, and -ul after a consonant. Here are examples:

Ch'aeg-ul sapshida

*Let's buy a book*

Ton-ul pakkgo ship'õyo

*I want to change some money*

(NB hangwuk ton-ul yõngguk ton-uro pakkwu-go ship'õyo)

Maekju tu kaji jongnyu-rul sayo?

*Are you going to buy two (different) kinds of beer?*

Please note that the verbs issõyo and õpsõyo always take subjects, and not objects, so you will not find them in conjunction with nouns that have the object particle. This means that you will always see sentences of the form na-nun ch'aeg-i issõyo; you would never see a sentence like na-nun ch'aeg-ul issõyo, since issõyo and õpsõyo always take subjects. The same thing applies to verbs of quantity like manh-, since that verb and others like it are stating how much of something exists. They are thus similar to the verbs issõyo and õpsõyo.

### 5 Saying you're not doing something

In the last unit you learned the little word mot to say that you couldn't do something. Now it's time to learn how to say you do not, are not doing or are not going to do something (usually by choice). In other words, it is your decision, not circumstances beyond your control, which mean you are not doing whatever it is.

You use the little word an immediately before the verb, like this:

Na-nun maekju an masyõyo

*I'm not drinking beer/I don't drink beer* (it's your choice)

Jaemin-un shinae-e an kayo

*Jaemin's not going into town* (he doesn't want to, chooses not to etc.)

*Compare:* Jaemin-un shinae-e mot kayo (he can't, he has something else on, etc.) Sometimes, however, the word an simply means 'not'

Umshik-i an choayo

*The food is not good* (it's the food's fault - mot would be inappropriate)

### 6 Verb stems ending in -i

You have now learnt several verb stems which end in -i. They include mashi-, kolli-, and kidari-. These verbs change slightly

when you add the polite particle -yo. The last i changes to yŏ, to give you the polite style forms: mashyŏyo, kollyŏyo and kidaryŏyo.

### **i** Banking and finance

Banking is simple enough in Korea and the use of credit cards is widespread. There are one or two peculiarities, however, including the fact that Korea does not use cheques. The online system is highly developed, and you can send money electronically very easily and at a much cheaper cost than is usually possible in the West.

Cash is still the most common method of payment, however, and in addition to the coins there are 1,000 won, 5,000 won and 10,000 won notes (**ch'ŏn won** and **man won**). There is also a 100,000 won note (**shimman won**), although it looks more like a western cheque than money.

### Practice

Here is additional vocabulary for these exercises.

chan 잔	cup
ilk- 읽-	read
p'yo 표	ticket
pyŏng 병	bottle
tarŭn	another, different (modifier/adjective)

1 Complete the following sentences with the words taken from the box at the bottom.

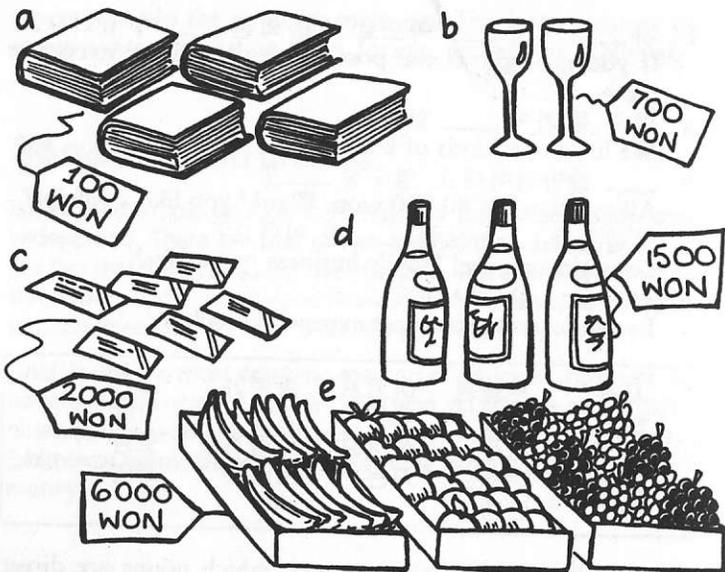
- a 우리 은행은 \_\_\_\_\_ 업무를 안 해요. \_\_\_\_\_ 은행에 \_\_\_\_\_.  
Our bank does not do that (kind of business). Please go to another bank.
- b 이쪽으로 \_\_\_\_\_ 식당이 있어요.  
If you go this way there is a restaurant.
- c 실례 \_\_\_\_\_ 한영 \_\_\_\_\_ 있어요?  
Excuse me, but do you have a Korean-English dictionary?
- d \_\_\_\_\_ 멀어요? 걸어서 \_\_\_\_\_ 걸려요.  
Is it far from here? On foot it takes 50 minutes.
- e \_\_\_\_\_ 한국 외환은행 \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ 이에요.  
I'm a bank clerk from the Korea Exchange Bank.

- f 저 \_\_\_\_\_ 에서 \_\_\_\_\_ 쪽으로 가면 외환 \_\_\_\_\_ 이 있어요.  
If you go right at the post office there is an exchange bank.
- g 맥주 두 가지 \_\_\_\_\_ 있어요.  
We have two kinds of beer.
- h \_\_\_\_\_ 팔만원이에요. 영수증 \_\_\_\_\_?  
All together it's 80,000 won. Would you like a receipt?
- i 오래간만 \_\_\_\_\_. 요즘 \_\_\_\_\_ 은 어때요?  
Long time no see! How's business nowadays?
- j 제일 \_\_\_\_\_ 술 마시고 \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I want to drink the most expensive alcohol.

사전	은행원	여기서	종류가	다른
비싼	모두	지만	가면	이에요
우체국	그런	싫어요	드릴까요	오른
있어요	가세요	저는	오십분	사업
의	은행			

2 In the following English sentences, which nouns are direct objects and would thus be marked with -(r)ul if they were to be translated into Korean? Note that some sentences may have more than one object, and some may not have any.

- a I want to watch a movie tonight.
  - b What are you going to do when you see him?
  - c How many cars does your family have?
  - d He just said a bad word.
  - e Can I eat some bread? No, but there are some crackers.
- 3 Think up appropriate Korean questions to go with the following answers.
- a Choesong ha-jiman, yŏgi-nun kurŏn saram-i ŏpsŏyo.
  - b I'm sorry, I don't have time.
  - c Aniyo. Chal mot kŏshyŏssŏyo.
  - d Pleased to meet you. I've heard a lot about you!
  - e Chamkkan kidariseyo. Yŏgi issŏyo.
  - f No, I don't like Korean food.
  - g I don't particularly want to drink beer right now.
- 4 Here are a number of items, and the price per item. Make up a sentence which says in Korean what the cost per item is and then say what the total cost is. For example, if you see a picture of six glasses, and the cost per glass is 500 won, you would write something like han-jan-e obaek won-ssig-ieyo. Kŭrŏnikka modu samch'ŏn won-ieyo.



5 The following sentences have no particles in them. Put them in!

- a 여기 \_\_\_\_\_ 왼쪽 \_\_\_\_\_ 가면 상업은행 지점 \_\_\_\_\_ 있어요.
- b 시간 \_\_\_\_\_ 있으면 열시 \_\_\_\_\_ 호텔 앞 \_\_\_\_\_ 만납니다.
- c 중국 돈 \_\_\_\_\_ 영국 돈 \_\_\_\_\_ 좀 바꾸고 싶어요.
- d 우리 은행 \_\_\_\_\_ 외환 업무 \_\_\_\_\_ 안 해요.
- e 저 \_\_\_\_\_ 매운 음식 \_\_\_\_\_ 못 먹어요. 갈비 \_\_\_\_\_ 먹고 싶어요.
- f 여기 \_\_\_\_\_ 그런 사람 \_\_\_\_\_ 없어요.
- g 그런 것 \_\_\_\_\_ 못 마시면, 물 \_\_\_\_\_ 마십니다.
- h 영한사전 두 가지 종류 \_\_\_\_\_ 있어요.
- i 한 권 \_\_\_\_\_ 이만원 \_\_\_\_\_, 그러니까 모두 삼만원이에요.

6 Practise counting the following things out loud.

- a 3 books, 8 books, 22 books
- b 1 day, 3 days, 67 days
- c 1 person, 7 people, 34 people
- d 3 octopus, 9 octopus, 14 octopus
- e 2 bottles, 10 bottles
- f 9 dogs, 1 dog (dog = kae)
- g 1,000 won, 10,000 won

7 Make up five Korean sentences based around the following verbs. Each of your sentences should put the verb in the negative, with the word an.

- a chumun ha-      d kidari-
- b kölli-            e ilk-
- c tüseyo

Which of your sentences would still make sense if you replaced an with mot? What would be the difference in meaning?

8 Translate the following sentences into Korean.

- a Excuse me, is there a restaurant in this area?
- b I can't eat naengmyön. I can't eat kalbi either.
- c How much is it? One plate is 2,000 won, so it's 6,000 won all together.
- d Go left here. If you go five minutes, you'll see (= there is) Chongno crossroads. Go left. The bank is on your right.
- e How much is the cheapest one?
- f It takes about ten minutes on foot.
- g There's no branch of the Korea Exchange Bank in this area.
- h I want to change some money. I have about 50,000 won.
- i In Korea there are ten kinds of kimch'i. In England there are none.
- j Would you like a Korean language dictionary?
- k What type would you like?
- l Please give me the cheapest.
- m Is Mr Kim a bad man?
- n You're going to the post office? Okay, goodbye!

9 Make up a dialogue between a shopkeeper and a child going shopping. Here is the shopping list (NB milk = uyu; bottle = pyöng).

SHOPPING LIST	
2 bottles milk	Meat
Bread	10 beers
Kimch'i	Apples

# 05

## is this the bus for Tongdaemun market?/this fruit doesn't look too good!

In this unit you will learn

- how to catch buses in Korea and make sure you have got to the right place
- how to shop for food at the market
- how to express surprise or exclamation
- comparisons
- how to join two sentences together to make one

### ▶ Is this the bus for Tongdaemun market?

Mr Kim is a stranger in Seoul who wants to find his way to Tongdaemwun market. He ends up being persuaded to go to Namdaemwun market instead.

김선생 실례지만 여기 동대문 시장 가는 버스가 있어요?  
이선생 저도 서울 사람이 아니라서 잘 모르겠어요.

To Mrs O, another passer-by.

김선생 이 정류장에 동대문 시장 가는 버스가 서요?  
이선생 아니요. 이 정류장에는 동대문 시장 가는 버스가 없어요.

김선생 이십 번 버스를 타면 남대문 시장에 가요.  
이선생 남대문 시장이요? 남대문 시장에는 뭐가 있어요?  
이선생 뭐가 있느냐고요? 남대문 시장에는 안 파는 게 없어요.

김선생 동대문 시장보다 물건이 더 많아요?  
이선생 제 생각에는, 남대문 시장이 동대문 시장보다 물건도 더 많고 재미 있어요. 그렇지만 남대문 시장에서 원숭이는 안 팔아요.

김선생 동대문 시장에서는 팔지만...  
이선생 정말이예요? 그런데 저는 원숭이는 필요 없어요.  
이선생 그럼 이십 번 버스를 타세요.

김선생 어디서 타요?  
이선생 바로 길 건너편 정류장에서 타세요.  
김선생 버스 요금이 얼마예요?  
이선생 정말 촌사람이시군요! 사백 원이예요.  
김선생 고맙습니다.  
이선생 빨리 가세요. 저기 버스가 와요.

Mr Kim Shillye-jiman, yōgi Tongdaemun shijang kanūn bōsu-ga issōyo?

Mr Lee Chō-do Sōul saram-i ani-rasō chal morūgessōyo.

To Mrs O, another passer-by.

Mr Kim I chōngnyujang-e Tongdaemun shijang kanūn bōsu-ga sōyo?

Mrs O Aniyō. I chōngnyujang-e-nun Tongdaemun shijang ganun bōsu-ga ōpsōyo. Iship pōn bōsu-rul t'a-myōn Namdaemun shijang-e kayō.

Mr Kim Namdaemun shijang-iyo? Namdaemun shijang-e-nun mwo-ga issōyo?

- Mrs O** Mwo-ga innünyagoyo? Namdaemun shijang-enun an p'anün ke öpsöyo.
- Mr Kim** Tongdaemun shijang-poda mulgön-i tö manayo?
- Mrs O** Che saenggag-enun, Namdaemun shijang-i Tongdaemun shijang-poda mulgön-do tö man-k'o chaemi issöyo. Küröch'iman Namdaemun shijang-esö wonsungi-nun an p'arayo. Tongdaemun shijang-esö-nun p'aljiman . . .
- Mr Kim** Chöngmal-ieyo? Kürönde, chö-nun wonsungi-nun p'iryo öpsöyo.
- Mrs O** Küröm iship pön bösu-rul t'aseyo.
- Mr Kim** Ödi-sö t'ayo?
- Mrs O** Paro kil könnöp'yön chöngnyujang-esö t'aseyo.
- Mr Kim** Bösu yogüm-i ölma-eyo?
- Mrs O** Chöngmal ch'onsaram-ishigunyo! Sabaek won-ieyo.
- Mr Kim** Komapsümnida.
- Mrs O** Ppalli kaseyo. Chögi bösu-ga wayo.

- 1 Why can't the first person help?
- 2 What happens if you take bus number 20?
- 3 What is the choice like at Namdaemun?
- 4 Which market is preferred?
- 5 Is there anything you can't get at Namdaemun?
- 6 Where should you catch the bus?
- 7 Why is there surprise at the last question?
- 8 Why the hurry?

### Phrases and expressions

(chal) morügesöyo	<i>I don't know (at all)</i>
an p'anün ke öpsöyo	<i>there's nothing which is not sold (you can buy everything)</i>
mwoga innünyagoyo?	<i>you're asking what there is? (you mean you don't know?) (based on iss-, there is, exists)</i>
che saenggag-enun	<i>in my opinion</i>

<b>Tongdaemun 동대문</b>	<i>Great East Gate (in Seoul), Tongdaemun</i>
<b>shijang 시장</b>	<i>market</i>
<b>kanün 가는</b>	<i>going to, bound for</i>
<b>bösü 버스</b>	<i>bus</i>
<b>Söul 서울</b>	<i>Seoul</i>
<b>(noun)-ani-rasö -아니라서</b>	<i>since it is not (noun) (here: since I am not . . .)</i>
<b>tarün 다른</b>	<i>another, different</i>

-ege -에게  
**chöngnyujang** 정류장  
sö- 서-  
pön 번  
t'a- 타-  
**Namdaemun** 남대문

-iyo -이요

p'anün ke 파는 게  
an p'anün ke 안 파는 게

-poda -포다  
mulgön 물건  
man(h)- 많-

che 제  
saenggak 생각  
-ko -고  
chaemi iss- 재미 있-  
wonsungi 원숭이  
p'arayo 팔아요

p'aljiman 팔지만

chöngmal 정말  
p'iryo öps- 필요 없-

p'iryo iss- 필요 있-  
paro 바로

kil 길  
könnöp'yön 건너편  
yogum 요금

ch'onsaram 촌사람  
-ishigunyo -이시군요

ppalli 빨리

chögi 저기

kögi 거기

wayo 와요

o- 오-

pi-ga o- 비가오-

to  
bus stop  
stop (stem)  
number  
take (transport), travel on (transport)  
Great South Gate (in Seoul),  
Namdaemun  
(see note 3: used to check information, e.g. 'you mean?')  
item for sale, items sold  
something which is not sold,  
not available  
more than  
goods  
is many/is a lot (h is not pronounced; polite style: **manayo**)  
(NB pronunc: h + k = k'; therefore **manh-** + **-ko** = **mank'o**)  
my (humble form)

thought  
and (to join clauses)  
is interesting, is fun  
monkey  
sell (polite style form, stem is irregular)  
they sell, but . . . (i.e. they do sell . . . , however)

really  
is not necessary, is not needed,  
has no need of

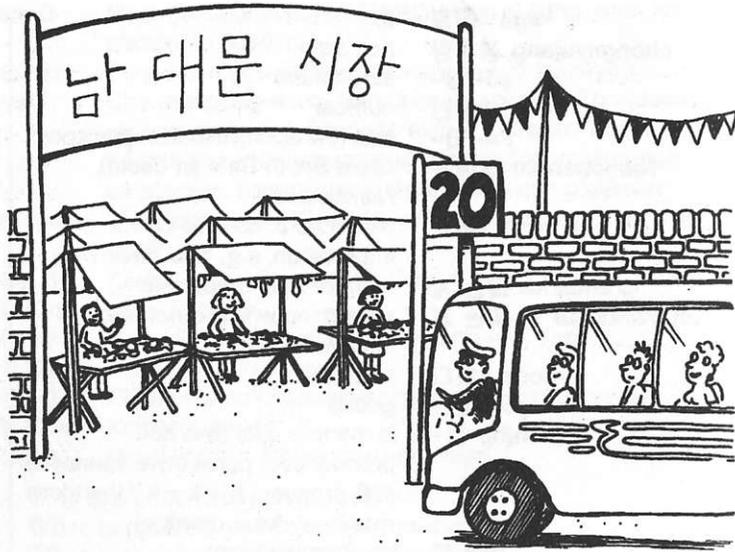
is necessary, is needed  
directly

road, route  
opposite side  
fee, fare

country bumpkin, yokel  
(see note 7: based on copula)  
quickly

over there, over yonder  
over there (nearer than **chögi**)  
come (polite style form)

come (stem)  
rains, is raining (polite style:  
pi-ga wayo)



## Grammar

### 1 -irasō, -anirasō

In the dialogue you will find the phrase *sōul saram-i ani-rasō*. This is related to the negative copula *anieyo* and you will see that both forms include the part *-ani-*. *ani-rasō* is a different form of *anieyo*, and it means *since (it) is not a (noun)*. The *-rasō* bit means *because* or *since*. The sentence in the dialogue therefore means *since I am not a Seoul person . . . , since I'm not from Seoul . . .*

To say the opposite of this, that is, *since something is something else*, you use the form *-irasō* instead of *anirasō*. Thus, you could say *since I'm a Korean* with the words: *hanguk saram-irasō . . .*

Here are examples of both constructions, and you should also study the example in the dialogue:

Hanguk saram-i anirasō hangungmal chal mot haeyo  
*Since I'm not a Korean I can't speak Korean very well*

Yōngguk saram-irasō sul chal masyōyo  
*Since I'm an English person I'm a good drinker*

### 2 Particle order

You will have noticed that sometimes Korean allows you to put more than one particle onto the end of a word, as in the

example *Namdaemun shijang-e-nun mwōga issōyo*? This makes a topic out of the phrase 'at Namdaemun market'. You have to be careful that the particles are put into the correct order, however. For example, you can say *hanguk-e-do issōyo* (*they have it in Korea, too*), but *hanguk-do-e issōyo* is wrong. You can learn the correct orders by observing the example sentences in this course. There are some rules, however, which you will find useful.

Many particles cannot occur together because their meanings would be contradictory (the same noun cannot be both subject and object, for example), so it is best to stick to only using combinations that you have seen.

However, the particles *-do* and *-ūn/-nūn* (*too, also* and topic) can be added after most other particles (but not the subject or object particles), both giving extra emphasis to the noun and particle to which they are added. Possible examples are *-esōnun*, *esōdo*, and so on. You might like to study the following two examples which illustrate the use of combined particles:

Kim sōnsaengnim-un hanguk-edo ilbon-edo kayo  
*Mr Kim goes both to Korea and to Japan*

Sōul-enun shiktang manayo  
*In Seoul (topic) there are many restaurants*

### 3 Checking on something

The particle *-yo* (or *-iyo* after consonants) can be added to any noun to check what has been said, to clarify something or to show surprise. In the dialogue one speaker asks which bus goes to Namdaemun market, and the other says *Namdaemun shijang-iyo*? This translates as *Namdaemun market? You said Namdaemun market, right? You want Namdaemun market? or something similar*. If a shopkeeper told you that an apple cost 10,000 won (a ridiculously high price), you might say *Manwon-iyo? 10,000 won? (You must be joking!)*. Depending on the intonation it can express surprise or incredulity or can simply be used to check whether what you heard was correct.

### 4 Comparing things

You can compare one thing with another quite simply in Korean. Let's take an example sentence. To say that English beer is better than Korean beer, the pattern is as follows (first

with the English words to show how the construction works, then with Korean):

*English beer* (subject or topic) *Korean beer-poda is more good*  
Yŏngguk maekju-nun Hanguk maekju-poda tŏ choayo

You can even omit the word tŏ if you want to. Here is another example in which something is claimed to be more tasty than something else:

Che saenggag-enun hanguk umshig-i chungguk umshik-poda  
(tŏ) mashi issŏyo.

*In my opinion, Korean food is tastier than Chinese food.*

How many other examples can you spot in the dialogue?

## 5 Many and few, big and small

Korean uses the word *manayo* to say that there are many of something. It uses another word *k'u-* to say that something is big (polite style *k'ŏyo*). The stem for the verb *manayo* is *manh-* (the *h* is still there in Korean writing in the polite form *manayo*, but is silent in pronunciation).

To say something is small you use the verb *chak-*, polite form *chagayo*; to say there is or are few of something use the verb *chŏk-*, polite form *chŏgŏyo*. Here are some examples:

Yŏnggug-enun yongguk saram-i manayo  
*In England there are many English people*

Yongguk-enun hanguk saram-i chŏgŏyo  
*In England there are few Koreans*

I-chaeg-un k'ŭ-go chŏ-chaeg-un chagayo  
*This book is big and that one is small*

## 6 Joining sentences together

You have learnt the word *kurigo* which can be used to begin a second sentence with the meaning 'and . . .' Take the example sentences:

Hanguk ūmshik choayo. Kŭrigo ilbon ūmshik-do choayo  
*Korean food is good. And Japanese food is good too*

These two sentences can be joined into one by taking the verb stem of the first (*choh-* from *choayo*), and adding the ending *-ko* to it:

Hanguk umshik choh-ko ilbon ūmshik-do choayo

(NB *h + k = k'*, therefore *choh-ko* is pronounced *cho-k'o*.)

This verb ending *-ko* is common in Korean, and it can be used with all verbs. Here is another example:

Kim sŏnsaengnim-un ch'aeg-ul ilk-ko Chang sŏnsaengnim-un  
t'ellebi pwayo

*Mr Kim reads books and Mr Chang watches TV*

## 7 Exclamations

The verb ending *-kunyo* can be added to verb stems in order to express surprise. Look at the example in the dialogue, where you will find it with the copula. It is particularly common with the copula, often in the honorific form *-ishi-gunyo*, and it is this form that you have met:

Kim sŏnsaengnim-ishi-gunyo! Pangapsŭmnida  
*Ah, so you're Mr Kim (surprise, surprise)! Pleased to meet you!*

You do not need to use this form yourself, but you need to be able to recognize it if a Korean uses it. Here is an example of its use with the normal (non-honorific) copula:

Kim sŏnsaengnim adul-i-gunyo! Chigŭm ōdi kayo?  
*So you're Mr Kim's son! Where are you going now?*

## i Markets

Seoul has several famous and fascinating markets, particularly Tongdaemun and Namdaemun which you have learnt something about in this lesson. Namdaemun is more compact, perhaps more pleasant to look round and has more tourists. Tongdaemun sprawls right on all the way down Ch'ŏngyech'ŏn (parallel to Chongno), and is cheaper for some goods. It depends a bit on what you want to buy as to which is best. Tongdaemun has a better selection of shoes and boots, for example, but both of them are well worth a visit.

Both Tongdaemun and Namdaemun are also night markets, and the best time to go is between one and six in the morning. The night markets can be good, but they can also sometimes be disappointing. If you're in Seoul for a while it's probably something which is worth trying once.

There are other markets too. Chegi shijang is much less well known (and therefore less touristy) and is great for food, Chinese herbs and medicines, and for ginseng products. Itaewon is well known for having hordes of foreigners and lots of Koreans who can speak English. But it's not the cheapest place to shop by any means. Cities out of Seoul also have good markets of course, and the fish market

(much of it raw) at Pusan is a case in point. Korean markets are something you'll probably grow to love or hate!

## ▶ This fruit doesn't look too good!

In this dialogue a Korean girl, Minja, goes to the market looking to buy some boxes of apples. She has some trouble, but eventually manages to strike a good deal.

- 민자** 여기 사과 얼마예요?  
**점원 A** 한 상자에 삼만 원이에요.  
**민자** 너무 비싸네요. 좀 깎아주세요.  
**점원 A** 그럼 한 상자에 이만 팔천 원에 가져가세요.  
**민자** 그래도 비싸요.  
**점원 A** 그럼 다른 데 가보세요. (to himself) 오늘 아침부터 재수없네!

Minja goes to another grocers.

- 민자** 이 사과가 싱싱해 보이지 않네요. 어떤 건 좀 썩었어요.  
**점원 B** 그래요? 그럼 좀 깎아드릴게요.  
**민자** 얼마나요?  
**점원 B** 한 상자에 삼만 천 원만 주세요.  
**민자** 뭐라고요?! 옆 가게보다 더 비싸네요.  
**점원 B** 좋아요. 그럼 이만 칠천 원만 주세요.  
**민자** 좀 더 깎아주세요.  
**점원 B** 좋아요. 한 상자에 이만 오천 원 내세요.  
**민자** 감사합니다. 세 상자 주세요.

- Minja** Yögi sagwa ölma-eyo?  
**Chömwon A** Han sangja-e samman won-ieyo.  
**Minja** Nömu pissa-neyo. Chom kkakka-juseyo.  
**Chömwon A** Küröm han sangja-e iman-p'alch'ön won-e kajyö-gaseyo.  
**Minja** Kúraedo pissayo.  
**Chömwon A** Küröm tarün te ka-boseyo.  
 (to himself) Onül ach'im-put'ö chaesu ömne!

Minja goes to another grocers.

- Minja** I-sagwa-ga shingshing hae-pojji anneyo. Öttön gön chom ssögössöyo.  
**Chömwon B** Kúraeyo? Kuröm chom kkakka-durilkkeyo.  
**Minja** Ölma-na-yo?  
**Chömwon B** Han sangja-e samman-ch'ön wön-man chuseyo.  
**Minja** Mworaguyo?! Yöp kage-poda tö pissaneyo.

- Chömwon B** Choayo. Kuröm iman-ch'ilch'ön wön-man chuseyo.  
**Minja** Chom tö kkakka-juseyo.  
**Chömwon B** Choayo. Han sangja-e iman-och'ön won naeseyo.  
**Minja** Komapsümnida. Se sangja chuseyo.

- 1 How much reduction does the first vendor give on a box?
- 2 What is the response?
- 3 What is the problem at the second stall?
- 4 What is the cause for surprise?
- 5 What is the final price?

## Phrases and expressions

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| chom kkakka-juseyo<br>(onul ach'im-put'ö)<br>chaesu ömne | please cut the price a bit for me<br>I've had no luck (all morning);<br>I'm unlucky |
| shingshing haepojji anhayo<br>mworaguyo?                 | they don't look fresh<br>what did you say?  |

sagwa 사과	apple
sangja 상자	box
-e -에	each, per
nömu 너무	too (much)
-neyo -네요	mild surprise sentence ending
kkakka-ju- 깎아주-	cut the price (for someone's benefit)
kajyöga- 가져가-	take
kúraedo 그래도	however, nevertheless, but still
te 데	place
kabo- 가보-	go and see, visit (a place)
ach'im 아침	morning
-put'ö -부티	from
chaesu 재수	luck
shingshing ha- 싱싱하-	is fresh
öttön 어떤	certain, some (as a question word = which?)
ssögössöyo 썩었어요	has gone bad, has gone off (polite style, past tense)
kkakka-durilkkeyo	I'll cut the price for you (polite style)
깎아드릴게요	approx, about (derived from the meaning 'or' you have learnt)
-na -나	
-man -만	only
yöp' 옆	next door
nae- 내-	pay

## Grammar

### 1 Only

The particle *-man* means *only*, so that *samman won-man* means *only 30,000 won*, and *chaek-man chuseyo* means *please give me the book only* or *please just give me the book*. *Na-man wassoyo* means *only I have come*. *-man* can be added to any noun in this way.

### 2 More surprises

The verb ending *-neyo* can be added to any verb stem, and it indicates surprise, although usually of a milder form than *-kunyo*. This is perhaps a more useful pattern to learn to use for yourself. Look carefully at the examples from the dialogues:

Pi-ga o-neyo!  
Aegi-ga ch'aeg-ul  
ing-neyo! (*spelt ilk-neyo*)  
Kuröm, kü-saram-un  
hanguk saram-ineyo!

*Oh no, it's raining!*  
*Wow, the baby is reading a book!*  
*So he's the Korean person, then! Or, so that person is a Korean, then!* (depending on the intonation)

### 3 Months of the year

The months of the year in Korean are as follows (note carefully June and October in which the number loses the last letter):

il-wol	January
i-wol	February
sam-wol	March
sa-wol	April
o-wol	May
yu-wol	June
ch'il-wol	July
p'al-wol	August
ku-wol	September
shi-wol	October
shibil-wol	November
shibi-wol	December

## 4 To and from (with people)

When you want to say *to* a person (write *to* a person, speak *to* a person, give *to* a person), you use the particle *-hant'e* or the particle *-ege* (the particle *-kke* can be used when the person is honorific). For example:

Ömöni-ege p'yönji ssöyo	<i>I'm writing a letter to Mum</i>
Jaemin-hant'e chu-go ship'öyo	<i>I want to give it to Jaemin</i>
Aböji-ege iyagi haeyo	<i>I'm speaking to Father</i>
Ömöni-hant'e ponaeoyo	<i>I'm sending it to Mother</i>

'From a person' is said with the particle *-hant'esö* or *-egesö*:

Ch'ingu-hant'esö ton padayo	<i>I receive money from my friend</i>
Wolyoil-lar-e ömöni-egesö p'yönji padayo	<i>I receive a letter from my Mum on Mondays</i>
Aböji-hant'esö chönhwa wassöyo	<i>I got a phone call from Dad (a call came)</i>

### 1 Cutting the price

There is plenty of bargaining to be done at Korean markets. The best advice is to go shopping with a Korean or someone who has been in Korea a long time and who knows how to get a good deal. Some shopkeepers already give the lowest price, and you must be aware that it is not fair to expect such dealers to cut. Others will give quite an inflated price when they see you are a foreigner. In general, however, Korea is a much safer place for not getting ripped off than somewhere like India or Thailand. In general, the places where there are fewer foreigners are more likely to offer the best deals (and less likely to speak English!).



## Practice

- 1 Answer the following questions in Korean, based on the dialogues in this lesson. Make sure to use full sentences in your answers.
- 동대문 시장이 남대문 시장보다 더 재미있어요?
  - 동대문 시장에서 뭘 안 팔아요?
  - 이십 번 버스를 타면 어디 가요?
  - 남대문 시장에는 물건이 많아요?
  - 이십 번 버스를 어디서 타요?
- 2 Make up answers or appropriate responses to the following questions.
- Tongdaemun shijang-e ka-go ship'öyo. Kach'i kayo?
  - Onul ach'im-e mwol haseyo?
  - I kwail-i an shingshing haeyo.
  - Bösu yogum-i öлма-eyo?
  - Hanguk choa haseyo? Hangungmal chaemi issöyo?
- 3 Imagine that you suddenly recognize or are surprised by seeing the following people or things. This exercise is intended to practise the -kunyo form with the copula (don't forget to use the honorific form of the copula when appropriate).
- Mr Kim's dog
  - Mr O's wife
  - a Japanese book
  - the Korea Exchange Bank
  - hyöngjun
  - the Chinese teacher
- 4 Make up sentences comparing the following sets of information. For the first set you would make up a sentence to say that Korean food is more tasty than Japanese food.
- |               |               |                   |
|---------------|---------------|-------------------|
| a Korean food | Japanese food | tasty             |
| b Here        | there         | more of them      |
| c Train       | bus           | faster (ppallayo) |
| d Mr Kim      | Mr Pak        | more luck         |
| e Namdaemwun  | Tongdaemun    | more expensive    |
- 5 Write a dialogue between a Korean in Paris who wants to get a bus to the Louvre and a Japanese, who the Korean mistakenly thinks is a Korean. Fortunately, the Japanese can also speak Korean, and so, after explaining that he is Japanese not Korean, he tells him that the Louvre is nearby (not far). He doesn't need to take a bus and it only takes seven minutes to walk.

- 6 Translate the following sentences into English.

- Yögi pissaneyo. Yöp kage-e ka-bopshida.
- Yögi-sö p'al-jiman tarun te-e ka-myön tö ssayo.
- Söul shinae-e kanun bosu-rul ödi-sö t'ayo?
- Onul ach'im-put'ö chaesu ömneyo!
- Ilbon-un Hanguk-poda tö pissayo. Kūraedo Hanguk-do pissayo.
- Che saenggak-poda Hanguk-e Yöngguk saram-i manhayo.
- Kkakka-durilkkeyo. Han sangja-e mansamch'önwon-e kajyö-gaseyo.
- Chumun hashigessöyo?
- Yögi-ga Hanguk-anirasö Kimch'i-rul p'anun te chögöyo.
- Wonsung-i innünyaguyo? Tongdaemun shijang-e ka-boseyo.

- 7 Which of the following particle sequences are acceptable and which are not?

- 시간에는 (shigan = time)
- 음식을은
- 어머니에게도
- 길에서는
- 버스에가
- 국이를 (kuk = soup)
- 아침부터를
- 밤부터는

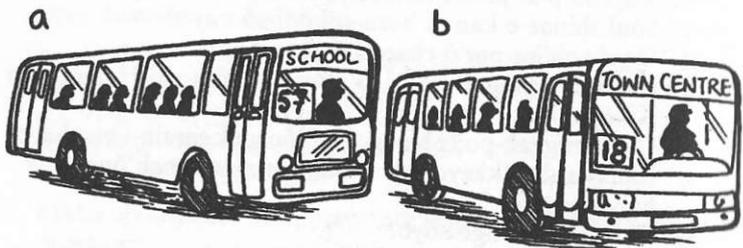
- 8 Translate the following sentences and put them into the -neyo mild surprise form.

- My, these dictionaries are expensive!
- Taegyü is coming!
- What are you doing? (surprise!)
- This newspaper's really interesting.

- 9 Join the following pairs of sentences, with the -ko clause ending.

- 이 사람이 박선생님이예요. 저 사람 강선생님이예요.
- 어머니 책 읽어요. 아버지 텔레비를 봐요.
- 고기 못 먹어요. 사과도 못 먹어요.
- 십일 번 버스가 남대문 시장에 가요. 이십 번 버스는 동대문 시장에 가요.
- 상준 버스 타요. 명택도 버스 타요.

10 Önu bösu-ga hakkyo-e kanün bösu-eyo? Shipp'al pön bösu-ga ödi kayo?



# 06

off to the  
mountains/I've  
got a nasty  
headache!

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about short-term plans
- how to suggest and discuss activities
- how to express your aches and pains, say that you are ill and get sympathy
- the probable future (what you expect to do or what is most probable)
- how to make suggestions and tell others what you are thinking of doing

## ▶ Off to the mountains

Mr Kim wants to take Tony mountain climbing, but with Tony's busy schedule they have some difficulty finding a convenient date.

- 김선생** 요즘 날씨가 아주 좋아요.  
**토니** 네. 한국은 영국보다 날씨가 좋아요.  
**김선생** 내일 뭐 할 거예요? 별일 없으면 등산이나 갈까요?  
**토니** 가고 싶지만 내일은 집사람하고 동대문 시장에서 쇼핑 하기로 했어요.  
**김선생** 그럼 다음 일요일은 어때요?  
**토니** 다음 일요일에는 대학 동창들하고 불국사에 갈까요?  
**김선생** 그럼 다음 일요일도 안 되겠네요. 언제가 좋을까요?  
**토니** 그 다음 일요일은 아마 괜찮을거예요.  
**김선생** 좋아요. 그럼 다음 일요일에 갑시다.  
**토니** 저도 등산을 좋아 해요.  
 그런데 영국에는 산이 많지 않아서 등산을 많이 못 했어요.  
 그런데 어느 산에 갈까요?  
**김선생** 도봉산이 편할거예요.  
**토니** 그럼 도봉산 입구에서 만날까요?  
**Mr Kim** Yojūm nalssi-ga aju choayo.  
**Tony** Ne. Hanguk-un yōngguk-poda nalssi-ga choayo.  
**Mr Kim** Naeil mwo ha-ikōeyo? Pyōlil ōps-umyōn tungsan-ina ka-ikkayo?  
**Tony** Ka-go ship'-jiman naeil-un chipsaram-hago Tongdaemun shijang-esō shyop'ing ha-giro haessōyo.  
**Mr Kim** Kūrōm taūm ilyoir-un ōttaeyo?  
**Tony** Taūm ilyoil-enun taehak tongch'ang-hago pulguksa-e ka-ikka haeyo.  
**Mr Kim** Kūrōm taūm ilyoil-do an toe-genneyo. Ōnje-ga cho-ulkkayo?  
**Tony** Kū taūm ilyoir-un ama kwaench'an-ulköeyo.  
**Mr Kim** Choayo. Kūrōm kū taūm ilyoil-e kapshida.  
**Tony** Chō-do tūngsan-ul choa haeyo. Kūrōnde yōngguk-enun san-i manch'i anasō tūngsan-ul mani mot haessōyo. Kūrōnde ōnu san-e ka-ikkayo?  
**Mr Kim** Tobongsan-i p'yōn ha-ikōeyo.  
**Tony** Kūrōm Tobongsan ipku-esō manna-ikkayo?

- 1 How does English weather compare with Korean?
- 2 What does Mr Kim suggest and under what circumstances?

- 3 What plans does Tony have for tomorrow?
- 4 With whom has he made plans for the following Sunday?
- 5 What is resolved?
- 6 What do you know about Tony's opinion regarding the experience of mountain climbing?

## Phrases and expressions

- naeil mwo halkōeyo? *what are you going to do tomorrow?*  
 pyōlil ōpsūmyōn ... *if you don't have anything special on ...*  
 an twoegenneyo *it won't be any good, then (unfortunately)*  
 ama kwoench'anulkōeyo *it will probably turn out (be) okay*

nalssi 날씨	weather
naeil 내일	tomorrow
-(ū)lkōeyo -(으)ㄹ 거예요	(used to give verbs a future meaning, see note 3)
pyōlil 별일	a special matter, something particular
tungsan 등산	mountain climbing
-(ū)lkkayo -(으)ㄹ 까요	(verb ending meaning shall we?, see note 6)
shyōp'ing (ha-) 쇼핑(하-)	shopping (do/go shopping)
-kiro haessōyo -기로 했어요	decided to
ilyoil 일요일	Sunday
ilyoillal 일요일날	Sunday (longer form)
taehak 대학	university
tongch'ang 동창	colleague (fellow student in this case)
pulguksa 불국사	Pulguksa (Korean Buddhist temple, the largest in Korea, near Kyōngju)
-(ū)lkkha haeyo -(으)ㄹ 까 해요	am thinking of doing
ōnje 언제	when
san 산	mountain
man-ch'i anasō 많지 않아서	since there aren't many (written manh-ji anh-asō)
haessōyo 했어요	did (past tense form of ha- do)
ōnū 어느	which one
Tobongsan 도봉산	Tobongsan (mountain in Seoul)
p'yōn ha- 편하-	is comfortable, is convenient
ipku 입구	entrance

## Grammar

### 1 Verb stems ending in i

This unit contains several verbs whose stems end in *i*, for example: *umjigi-* (*move*), *nolli-* (*tease*), and you have previously met *mashi-* (*drink*), *kidari-* (*wait*) and *köllli-* (*lasts, takes (time)*). All these verbs change the last *i* to *yo* and add *yo* in order to form the present polite style. This gives the polite style forms *umjigyöyo*, *nollyöyo*, *mashyöyo*, *kidaryöyo*, *kölllyöyo*.

### 2 Days of the week

The following are the days of the week in Korean:

wolyoil	Monday
hwayoil	Tuesday
suyoil	Wednesday
mokyoil	Thursday
kümyoil	Friday
t'oyoil	Saturday
ilyoil	Sunday

### 3 Probable future

The most common way to give a sentence a future meaning in Korean is to add *-(u)lköeyo* to the stem of the main verb. As you would expect, you add *-lköeyo* if the stem ends in a vowel, and *-ülköeyo* if the stem ends in a consonant. Thus *manna-* becomes *manna-lköeyo* (*I will meet*), and *anj-* becomes *anj-ülköeyo* (*I will sit*).

We have called the form the probable future, because there are other ways of expressing the future tense in Korean – there is a definite future, for example, which you might use if there is scarcely any doubt that you will do something, or if you want to stress your intention to do it. The probable future is the most common, and is used in most everyday situations when you want to say that you are going to do something:

Naeil chungguk taesagwan-e ka-lköeyo  
*I will (probably) go to the Chinese embassy tomorrow*

Naenyön-e ch'a-rul sa-lköeyo  
*I'm going to buy a car next year (naenyön, next year)*

The same form has another meaning, in addition to the future. It can also mean something like *is probably (verb)ing*.

Pi-ga o-lköeyo  
*It is probably raining*

### 4 Making decisions

To say that you have decided to do something, simply add *-kiro haessöyo* onto the verb stem of the verb you have decided to do. To say that you have decided to eat with Mr Kim, for example, you would say: *Kim sonsaengnim-hago chomshim-ul mök-kiro haessöyo*:

Tashak tongch'ang-hago tungsan ha-giro haessöyo  
*I've decided to go mountain climbing with my friend(s) from university*

### 5 Thinking about it

Sometimes when you still haven't made definite plans, you want to say that you are thinking about doing something. You might say, for example, *I am thinking about going away for the weekend*. Korean provides an easy way of allowing you to do this. Simply add the ending *-lkka haeyo* to a verb stem ending in a vowel, or *-ülkka haeyo* to a verb stem ending in a consonant. That's all there is to it. To take one example, suppose you were thinking of going to Söraksan (Sörak mountain) on Sunday, you simply say, *ilyoir-e söraksan-e ka-lkka haeyo*. Can you work out the meaning of the following example? *Chömshim-e pihimpab-ul mög-ülkka haeyo*.

### 6 Shall we?

To say to someone 'shall we do something or other?', you add a verb ending very like the one you have just learned. Add *-lkkayo?* to a verb stem ending in a vowel, and *-ülkkayo?* to a verb stem ending in a consonant. To say to someone 'shall we sit here?' you would therefore say *yögi anj-ülkkayo?*, and to say 'shall we have a beer?' you would say *maekjwu mashi-lkkayo?*

**i** Koreans are very fond of mountain climbing and if you go to virtually any Korean mountain on a weekend or public holiday, you will be sure to find hordes of Koreans all dressed up in hiking gear, proceeding with great enthusiasm. For most Koreans mountain climbing means a strenuous hike rather than scaling rock faces, but that in no way diminishes the fun (or the steepness of the mountains!).

Sport is very popular, too, and nowadays the most popular sports are the American imports baseball (**yagu**, verb: **yagu ha-**) and basketball (**nonggu ha-**). Football (**ch'ukku**) is also popular and, for the wealthy, golf has great status (**golp'u**).

Other pastimes include the **noraebang** and *karaoke*; Koreans also love to drink, and sometimes break into song as they do so. Board and card games are also popular among some, the most common ones being **paduk** (*go* is the Japanese equivalent, and is somewhat known in the West), and **hwat'u**.

## ▶ I've got a nasty headache!

Yongtae is sick – everything seems to be hurting and his friend Jaehoon isn't very sympathetic. When he wants his friend Jaehoon to get him some medicine, Jaehoon has another suggestion. But Yongtae is not impressed.

- 재훈** 저 시내에 가는데 같이 갈까요?  
**용태** 글썽요... 저는 몸이 좀 좋지 않아요.  
**재훈** 또 몸이 좋지 않아요? 용태씨는 항상 피병을 부리지요!  
**용태** 아니요. 그렇지 않아요. 오늘은 정말 아파요.  
**재훈** 오늘은 어디가 아파요?  
**용태** 두통이 있어요. 머리가 좀 아파요.  
**재훈** 그게 다예요? 걱정 하지 마세요. 아마 날씨가 더워서 그럴거예요.  
**용태** 아닌 것 같아요. 배도 아파요.  
**재훈** 많이 아파요?  
**용태** 그래요. 많이 아파요.  
**재훈** 그럼 약을 사러 약국에 갑시다.  
**용태** 저는 못 가요. 힘이 없어요. 게다가 다리도 좀 아파요.  
**재훈** 다리도요? 전신이 다 아프군요. 안 아픈데가 있어요?  
**용태** 시끄러워요! 놀리지 마세요. 약을 먹어야겠어요.  
**재훈** 여기 만병통치약 술이 있어요! 사실 약보다 술이 더 좋아요.  
**용태** 농담 하지 마세요. 술 못 마셔요. 정말 병원에 가야겠어요.

- Jaehoon** Chō shinae-e ka-nunde, gach'i kalkkayo?  
**Yongtae** Kulsseyo . . . chō-nun mom-i chom choch'i anayo.  
**Jaehoon** Tto mom-i choch'i anayo? Yongtae-sshi-nun hangsang kkoebyoŋg-ul purijiyo!  
**Yongtae** Aniyo. Kŭrōch'i anayo. Onŭl-un chōngmal ap'ayo.  
**Jaehoon** Onŭr-un ōdi-ga ap'ayo?  
**Yongtae** Tut'ong-i issōyo. Mōri-ga chom ap'ayo.  
**Jaehoon** Kŭ-ge ta-eyo? Kōkjōng ha-ji maseyo. Ama nalssi-ga tōwosō kurōlkō-eyo.  
**Yongtae** Anin kōt kat'ayo. Pae-do ap'ayo.  
**Jaehoon** Mani ap'ayo?  
**Yongtae** Kŭraeyo. Mani ap'ayo.  
**Jaehoon** Kŭrōm yag-ul sa-rō yakkug-e kapshida.  
**Yongtae** Chō-nun mot kayo. Him-i ōpsōyo. Kedaga tari-do chom ap'ayo.  
**Jaehoon** Tari-doyo? Chōnshin-i ta ap'ū-gunyo. An ap'ūn de-ga issōyo?  
**Yongtae** Shikkurōwoyo! Nolli-ji maseyo. Yag-ul mōgō-yagessōyo.  
**Jaehoon** Yōgi manbyōngt'ongch'iyak, sul-i issōyo! Sashil yak-poda sur-i tō choayo.  
**Yongtae** Nongdam ha-ji maseyo. Sul mot mashyōyo. Chōngmal pyōngwon-e ka-yagessōyo.

- 1 Why is there little sympathy at first?
- 2 What are the symptoms?
- 3 What is the suggested reason for the illness?
- 4 Why can't they both go for the medicine?
- 5 What cure-all is suggested?

## Phrases and expressions

- chō-nun mom-i chom *I don't feel very well*  
 choh-ch'i anhayo  
 kŭrōch'i anhayo *of course not*  
 kkoebyoŋg-ul purijiyo *you're making it up! (feigning an illness)*  
 kōkjōng ha-ji maseyo *don't worry! (colloquial form: kokjong maseyo)*  
 anin kōt gat'ayo *I don't think so; it doesn't seem like it*  
 chōnshin-i ta ap'ūgunyo! *your whole body must be hurting!*  
 shikkurōwoyo! *shut up!, be quiet! (lit.: 'it's noisy')*  
 nolli-ji maseyo *don't joke, don't kid me, don't tease*  
 yag-ul mōgōyagessōyo *I'll have to take some medicine*

-nūnde -는데	(verb ending for clauses, see note 4)
kūlsseyo 글썩요	<i>I dunno, I'm not sure, who knows?</i>
mom 몸	<i>body</i>
cho-ch'i anh- 좋지 않-	<i>is not good (from choh-)</i>
tto 또	<i>again; moreover, also, furthermore</i>
hangsang 항상	<i>always</i>
kkwoebyōng 꾀병	<i>a feigned illness</i>
ap'ū- 아프-	<i>hurts (stem)</i>
ap'ayo 아파요	<i>hurts (polite style)</i>
tut'ong 두통	<i>headache</i>
mōri 머리	<i>head</i>
kōkjōng 걱정	<i>worry, concern</i>
kōkjōng ha- 걱정이-	<i>be worried</i>
-ji maseyo -지 마세요	<i>please don't</i>
ama 아마	<i>perhaps, probably</i>
tōwosō 더워서	<i>because it is hot (can also mean because you're hot, but here subject is weather)</i>
kūrōlkōeyo 그럴거예요	<i>it will probably be like that</i>
kat'- 갈-	<i>seems like</i>
pae 배	<i>stomach</i>
yak 약	<i>medicine</i>
yakkuk 약국	<i>chemists, drugstore</i>
him 힘	<i>strength, energy</i>
kedaga 게다가	<i>on top of that</i>
tari 다리	<i>leg</i>
chōnshin 전신	<i>the whole body</i>
ap'ūn 아픈	<i>hurting, painful (adjective)</i>
nolli- 놀리-	<i>make fun of</i>
manbyōngt'ongch'iyak	<i>cure-all medicine, miracle cure,</i>
만병통치약	<i>panacea</i>
-yagessōyo -야겠어요	<i>will have to</i>
sashil 사실	<i>fact (the fact is . . .)</i>
nongdam 농담	<i>joke (noun)</i>
nongdam ha- 농담하-	<i>jokes (verb)</i>
pyōngwon 병원	<i>hospital</i>

## Grammar

## 1 To hurt

The verb stem ap'ū- (*hurt*) belongs to another group of verbs all ending in -ū. These delete the u and add instead a or ō, followed by yo to form the polite style. Thus ap'ū- in the polite style is ap'ayo.

How do you know whether the last vowel before the yo will be an a or an ō? Simply remember this rule: if the preceding vowel is an a (as in ap'ū-) or o, then the ū becomes a, otherwise it is ō.

## 2 Don't do it!

When you want to tell someone not to do something, take the stem of the verb you want to tell them not to do and add -ji maseyo to it. Thus, maekju-rul mashi-ji maseyo means *please don't drink beer*. The two phrases in this dialogue, kōkjōng ha-ji maseyo and nolli-ji maseyo are quite common. The first means *don't worry!*, and the second means *don't tease me!*. What other useful examples can you think of? How would you say 'please don't wait here' and 'don't do the shopping'?

## 3 Long negatives

You have learnt how to make negative sentences in Korean with mot and an, by putting them immediately in front of the verb. There is another way also, which is known as the long negative. There is no particularly significant difference between the two, though there are some circumstances in which you are more likely to find the long form than the shorter one you have learnt already. To spell out these distinctions would be rather long winded and would also make the difference seem more important than it really is. The best advice is to look carefully at the dialogues in this book, and to imitate Korean speakers whenever you can. You will then pick up a feel for which to use. Generally, short negatives are better in short, simple sentences; long negatives should be used in more complex sentences.

Here is how to make the long negative. Instead of adding something before the verb you wish to negate, take the stem of that verb and add -ji an(h)ayo or -ji mot haeyo, depending on whether you want to give the sense of the Korean word an (*won't* or *isn't going to*) or mot (*can't*).

Therefore, *mot kayo* in the long negative form would be *kaji mot haeyo*, and an *möggöyo* in the long negative form would be *mök-ji an(h)ayo*. Here is an example of each:

Aböji-nun nongdam ha-ji anayo  
*Dad doesn't tell jokes*

Yun sönsaengnim tũngsan-ul choa ha-jiman Yun sönsaengnim  
puin tũngsan ha-ji mot haeyo  
*Mr Yun likes mountain climbing, but his wife can't do it*

#### 4 Imminent elaboration

This sounds rather forbidding, but it isn't really all that difficult! Korean has a very common way of linking two clauses together to show that the first one is not all that you have got to say and that there is more coming in the second clause which relates to it. For example, look at the first sentence in the dialogue: *Na-nun shinae-e ka-nũnde*. That is the end of the first clause. The meaning is straightforward enough, *I'm going into town*, but the *-nũnde* added on to the end of *ka-* indicates that the speaker still has more to say which relates to what he has just said. It is a clue to the listener not to reply yet, but to wait until the rest has been said. The statement is not complete; there is more to come. In this case, the second clause is *kach'i kalkkayo?* (*shall we go together?*). Koreans use this pattern all the time to show that they have something more to say about what has just been said (in this case an invitation), and from now on you will meet the *-nũnde* pattern frequently in the unit dialogues.

The formation of the pattern is easy: take any verb which expresses an action (that is, not an adjectival verb) and add *-nũnde* to the stem. Note that you can also use *-nũnde* with the verbs *iss-* and *öps-*, giving you the forms *innnũnde* and *ömnũnde*.

Verbs which describe things (e.g. *is green*, *is hot*, *is foolish* etc.) take the form *-(ũ)nde* instead (*ũnde* after consonant stems, *nde* after vowels). The copula also takes this form, *-nde*:

Cho-nun Pak Jaemin-i-nde Kim sönsaengnim manna-rö  
wassöyo

*I'm Pak Jaemin (and I've got more to say): I've come to meet Mr Kim*

You have not learnt the past tense yet, but you might like to keep in the back of your mind the fact that *-nunde* is added to

the past stem of all verbs, whether they describe an action or are adjectival. In other words, it doesn't make the distinction that the present tense does.

#### 5 Descriptive verbs and processive verbs

Korean has two basic kinds of verbs – descriptive and processive. Processive verbs describe a process, the doing of something, an action. Thus, *mök-*, *anj-*, *ka-*, *ha-*, *manna-* are all processive verbs. Descriptive verbs describe something, so *choh-* is an example, because it describes something as good. *Cho(h)a ha-*, by contrast, is processive, because it describes the process or action of the speaker liking something. Descriptive verbs function like adjectives in English. They are adjectival verbs.

We tell you all this because some verb endings will only work with one of the two kinds of verbs. What we have just said about *-nũnde*, for example, could have been said much more compactly by saying that *-nũnde* can only be added to processive verbs, and that *-(ũ)nde* is added to descriptive verbs and the copula. In the future we shall be making use of these two terms when we describe verb endings.

The two verbs *iss-* and *öps-* can be either processive or descriptive depending on their use, and we will tell you about whether or not they can be used with particular verb endings as we go along.

There is one other verb, the copula, which is in a class of its own. We will tell you about this also on a case-by-case basis, as we did with *-nunde*.

#### 6 What you will have to do

This unit introduces you to one final pattern – how to say that you will have to do something.

To form the construction, take off the *-yo* of the polite style form of the verb and add *-yagessöyo*. Take the verb *mök-* as an example. The polite style is *möggöyo*, so taking off the *-yo* and adding the *-yagesöyo* ending we have *möggö-yagessöyo*. This can then be used in a sentence: *chigum möggö-yagessöyo* (*I am going to have to eat now (I'm obliged to)*).

The dialogue had two examples of the pattern: *yag-ul möggö-yagessöyo* and *pyöngwon-e ka-yagessöyo*. Can you remember what they mean?

## I Doctors and chemists

Most medicines can be bought over the counter without prescription at the **yakkuk** (*pharmacy*). Doctors are available at hospitals and generally speaking there is no equivalent of going to a doctor independent of the hospital. Koreans are enthusiastic takers of medicines for headache, tiredness, flu and so forth, and many frequently take tonics and health drinks in the interest of staying healthy.

Chinese medicine is also very popular in Korea and there are markets which concentrate on selling the herbs and potions which it prescribes.

## Practice

- 1 Here is an exercise about putting verbs into different forms. We give you some sentences with the verb stem, you write out the sentences in full, putting the verb into the correct form.

### Future

- a Yangju mashi-myōn naeil mōri-ga ap'u-
- b Ittaga chōmshim-ul mōk-
- c Hanguk saram manna-myōn hanja sajōn p'iryō ōps-

### Decided

- d Pyōngwōn-e ka-
- e Wonsungi-rul sa-
- f Onūl-un ūmshig-ul an mōk-

### Thinking of

- g Chō-nun 'Star Wars'(!) po-
- h Onūl ach'im shyop'ing ha-
- i Ilyoir-e pulguksa-e ka-

### Shall we

- j Ōnje tūngsan ka-?
- k Kim sōnsaengnim-ul ōdi-sō manna-?
- l Uch'eguk ap'-esō bōsu-rul t'a-?

- 2 The following dialogue concerns a boy who wants to go mountain climbing with Mik'a, a reluctant girl who keeps making up reasons why she can't go with him. Can you fill in the missing parts, giving reasons why she can't go? (Note: **annyōng** is a way of saying hello to a close friend, or someone younger than you.)

- Boy Mik'a, annyōng! Naeil shigan-i issōyo?  
(State another plan)  
Girl Kurōm ilyoil-e pyōlil ōps-umyōn kach'i tūngsan kalkkayo?  
(Too busy doing something else)  
Boy Taum ilyoir-un ōttaeyo?  
Girl (Another plan)  
Boy Ōnje shigan-i issōyo, kurōm? Na-rul an choa haeyo?  
Girl (Doesn't like mountain climbing)  
Boy Kurōm, an twoegennneyo.

- 3 Can you write a simple conversation between two friends, one who has a headache and the other who thinks she doesn't have any medicine and suddenly realizes that she does?



- 4 Here are some situations in which you might use one of the following idiomatic expressions. See if you can match them up. In some cases, more than one expression will fit, so be sure to find all the possibilities and then choose the most likely.
- a Your friend is making fun of you.
  - b You want to go out tonight with your friend, but she can't make it.
  - c You're in awful pain, and every part of your body seems to hurt.
  - d Someone has just said something really stupid.
  - e You're trying to concentrate, but someone is making too much noise.

- f You've made a mistake.  
g Your junior colleague has just said something you disagree with.  
h Your boss has just said something you disagree with.  
i Your mother is panicking about your health.  
j You didn't hear properly what your younger brother just said.

착각했어요  
놀리지 마세요  
시끄러워요  
걱정하지 마세요  
뭐라고요?

전신이 다 아프군요  
그렇지 않아요  
아닌 것 같아요  
재수 없네요  
안 되겠네요

- 5 This exercise is designed to help you practise the -nũnde pattern. For each question we give you one of two clauses in which the first one always ends in -nũnde. Your task is to make up an appropriate clause which fits with the one we have given you to make a complete sentence.

- a Bösu-ga o-nũnde \_\_\_\_\_  
b \_\_\_\_\_ -(nũ)nde an kayo.  
c I-osh-i pissa-nde \_\_\_\_\_ (os: clothes)  
d Yöngguk taesagwan-e ka-nũnde \_\_\_\_\_  
e Kũ-saram cho(h)-ũnde \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Choose the best word from those given here to fit in the gaps in the sentences. More than one might be possible, so choose the best option.

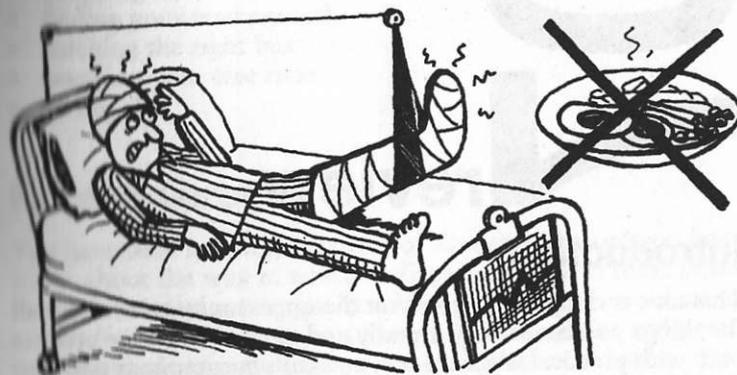
kũ'röch'iman    kedaga    kũrönde  
kũ'rön          kũlsseyo    kũrigo

- a Him-i hana-do öpsöyo. \_\_\_\_ chönsin-i ta ap'ayo.  
b Kach'i shyop'ing kalkkayo? \_\_\_\_ Tarun te-e ka-giro haennundeyo.  
c Sangmin-ssi-nũ'n nongdam mani haeyo. \_\_\_\_ chaemi öpsöyo.  
d Pulguksa-e ka-giro haessöyo. \_\_\_\_ mot kayo.  
e Pak sönsaengnim hakkyo-e kaseyo. \_\_\_\_ Kim sönsaengnim-do kaseyo.

- 7 Put the following sentences into the long negative form.

- a 고기를 좋아해요.    d 이 사과가 싱싱해요.  
b 지금 못 가요.        e 버스 못 타요.  
c 주문해요.

- 8 Ch'olho is in bed sick, with the following symptoms. Can you describe them?



# 20 review

## Introduction

This unit is designed to give you the opportunity to soak up all the things you have learnt already and to give you more practice both with practical language use, and with the grammar patterns. In addition, the unit has another important section which you must work through carefully – it describes all the common types of Korean verb stems and the way in which the endings are put on them. It is very important to master this, as you need to be comfortable putting different verb endings onto the different types of verb stem in order to progress quickly with your Korean studies. You should use this section to work through the grammar points, as you normally would, but you will also probably want to keep coming back to it for reference.

The unit is a further opportunity for you to revise both the practical topics we've gone through so far (finding your way, ordering food, and so on), and to check you are happy with all the major grammar points. If you find there are some topics which you are not so comfortable with, make sure you go back to the relevant lesson and cover them again.

## Topic revision

First of all, topic revision. Here is a list of the topics you have covered so far. Make sure that you know the basic words and phrases that you would need for each of them.

- meeting, identifying and introducing people
- finding out what other people are up to: where they are going and why
- buying drinks and going out for entertainment

- making simple phone calls and arranging to meet people
- discussing food and ordering food and drink in a restaurant
- shopping and money
- finding your way around
- catching the right bus
- planning your free time
- feeling ill

## Korean verbs

You have been learning the stems of Korean verbs and you have learnt about the way in which endings are put onto these stems to give particular meanings. You have learnt about vowel stems to which the particle -yo is added to give the polite style; you have learnt about consonant stems to which you add either -ōyo or -ayo to give the polite style. However, each of these two types of verb stem – consonant and vowel – can be broken down into further categories (one of these you have seen already – stems that end in -i). Each of these sub-categories has certain peculiarities which affect the way in which verb endings are added. We are now going to take you through each of the main types of verb stem in Korean, to show you how the endings are added. Some of this will be revision, but much will be new. Many of the verb stems we teach you are also new, and these may occur in the exercises from now on. They are all common verbs, and you should learn them.

## Consonant stems

- Most stems which end in consonants take the polite style endings -ōyo or -ayo, depending on whether or not the last vowel of the stem was an o or an a. Verb endings like -ko and -jiman attach straight to the consonant base. Endings like -(ū)lkkayo and -(ū)ps'hida attach the longer form (with the ū) to the verb stem. Here are some examples:

mōk-	<i>eat</i>	mōgōyo	mōk-jiman	mōg-ūlkkayo
anj-	<i>sit</i>	anjayo	anj-jiman	anj-ūlkkayo
pat-	<i>receive</i>	padayo	pat-jiman	pad-ūlkkayo
cho(h)-	<i>is good</i>	choayo	cho-ch'iman	cho-ūlkkayo
ilk-	<i>read</i>	ilgōyo	ilk-jiman	ilg-ūlkkayo

- Certain Korean verb stems which end in **l** change the **l** to a **t** before endings that begin with a consonant (like **-ko** and **-jiman**). The only very common verb that does this is:

tul-	<i>listen,</i>	turoyo	<i>tut-jiman</i>	tur-ülkkayo
	<i>hear</i>			

- Some verbs whose stem ends in **p** change the **p** to a **w** before adding the polite ending **-oyo**. The **p** remains in endings which begin with consonants (**-ko** and **-jiman**), but changes to the letter **u** before endings with two forms like **-(u)lkkayo** and **-(u)pshida**. The shorter form (without the **-u**) is then added:

töp-	<i>is hot</i>	töwoyo	töp-ko	töu-lkkayo
öryöp-	<i>is difficult</i>	öryöwoyo	öryöp-ko	öryöu-lkkayo
ch'up-	<i>is cold</i>	ch'uwoyo	ch'wup-ko	ch'uu-lkkayo
kakkap-	<i>is near</i>	kakkawoyo	kakkap-ko	kakkau-lkkayo
maep-	<i>is spicy</i>	maewoyo	maep-ko	maeu-lkkayo

- Perhaps the most confusing category is the last, the **l**-irregular verbs. These all end in **l**, but the **l** disappears before all endings that have two forms (**-(u)pshida**, **-(u)lkkayo** and so on), that is, the last column of our table. The shorter endings (without the **-u**) are then added.

sal-	<i>live</i>	sarayo	sal-go	sa-lkkayo
nol-	<i>have fun,</i>	norayo	nol-go	no-lkkayo
	<i>play</i>			
al-	<i>know</i>	arayo	al-go	a-lkkayo
p'al-	<i>sell</i>	p'arayo	p'al-go	p'a-lkkayo
möl-	<i>is far</i>	möröyo	möl-go	mö-lkkayo

## Vowel stems

You will find that all the vowel bases are regular in the final two columns. The only difficulty is in the formation of the polite style.

- Most vowel bases add the ending **-yo** directly to the stem to form the polite style. Endings like **-ko** and **-jiman** are added straight to the stem; endings with two forms (**-ulkkayo** and **-lkkayo**; **-upshida** and **-pshida**) add the shorter form straight to the stem since the stem ends in a vowel (note **ha-** has an irregular polite style form):

ka-	<i>goes</i>	kayo	ka-go	ka-lkkayo
cha-	<i>sleep</i>	chayo	cha-go	cha-lkkayo
ttöna-	<i>leave</i>	ttönayo	ttöna-go	ttöna-lkkayo
iröna-	<i>get up</i>	irönayo	iröna-go	iröna-lkkayo
kugyöng	<i>view,</i>	kugyöng	kugyöng	kwugyöng
ha-	<i>sight-see</i>	haeyo	ha-go	ha-lkkayo
kongbu	<i>study</i>	kongbu	kongbu	kongbwu
ha-		haeyo	ha-go	ha-lkkayo

The verbs **o-** (*come*) and **po-** (*look or watch*) are regular apart from their polite forms **wayo** and **pwayo**. The stem **toe-** (*become, is all right*) also has an irregular polite style **twaeoyo**.

- Stems that end in **-i** change the **i** to **yö** before the polite style **yo** is added. Everything else is as you would expect. Do remember, however, that some verb ending patterns are based on the polite style minus the **-yo** ending. For example, there is an ending **-sö** which attaches to the polite style minus the **yo**. In this case, the stem **mashi-** would be **mashyösö**, since it is based on the polite style (**mashyöyo**) minus the **yo**, plus **sö**:

mashi-	<i>drink</i>	mashyöyo	mashi-go	mashi-lkkayo
karüch'i-	<i>teach</i>	karüch'yöyo	karuch'i-go	karuch'i-lkkayo

An exception is the verb stem **shwi-** (*rest*) which keeps the **i** in the polite style before adding **öyo**.

- Stems that end in the vowel **ü** delete this **ü** before adding the polite style ending as you would for a consonant base (either **-öyo** or **-ayo**):

ssü-	<i>use; write</i>	ssöyo	ssü-go	ssü-lkkayo
ap'ü-	<i>hurts</i>	ap'ayo	ap'ü-go	ap'ü-lkkayo
pappü-	<i>is busy</i>	pappayo	pappü-go	pappü-lkkayo

Note, however, that verb stems which end in **l** not only delete the **ü**, but add another **l** before the polite style ending **-öyo** or **-ayo**. Everything else is regular:

pparü-	<i>is fast</i>	ppallayo	pparü-go	pparü-lkkayo
morü-	<i>not know</i>	mollayo	morü-go	morü-lkkayo
purü-	<i>sing, call</i>	pullöyo	purü-go	purü-lkkayo

- Bases that end in *u* change the *u* to *wo* before the polite style *-yo* is added. *Chu-* is generally not shortened like this, however, and has the polite form *chwoyo*:

paeu-	<i>study</i>	paewoyo	paeu-go	paeu-lkkayo
p'iu-	<i>smoke</i>	p'iwoyo	p'iu-go	p'iu-lkkayo
chu-	<i>give</i>	chuōyo	chu-go	chu-lkkayo
		(or chwoyo)		

## Practice

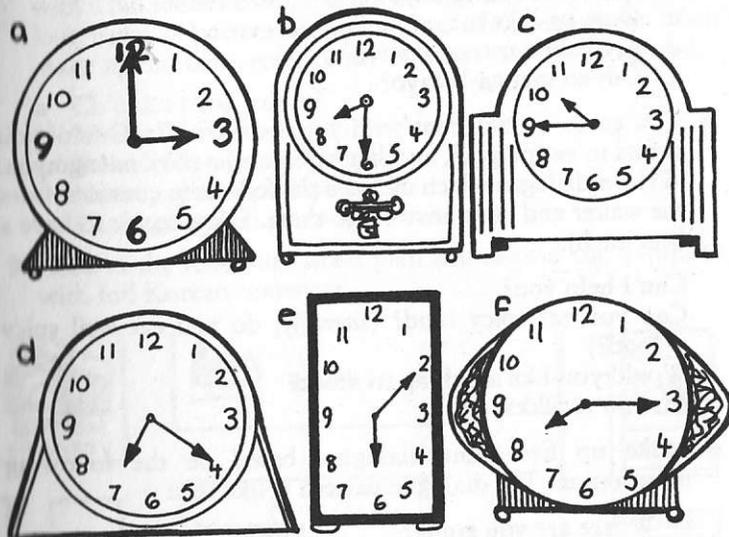
- 1 Translate the following sentences into English. Most of them should look familiar, as they are based closely on sentences you have met in the dialogues of units 1 to 6.

- Küröm, kach'i kayo.
- Onül chömshim-e shigan-i issöyo?
- Chinccha oraeganman-ieyo.
- Chö-nun ilbon mal sönsaengnim-i anieyo.
- Choesong hamnida. Chakkak haessöyo.
- Taüm wolyoir-un ama koench'an-ulköeyo.
- Chö-do Söwul saram-i ani-rasö chal morugessöyo.
- Chönshin-i ta ap'u-gunyo. An ap'un te-ga issöyo?
- Yöngguk ton-ul chungguk ton-uro paku-go ship'öyo.
- Kürigo chö-nun naengmyön-do mök-ko ship'öyo.
- Marün anju-hago p'ajön chuseyo.
- Han sangja-e iman won-e kajyö-gaseyo.

- 2 Telling the time in Korean is easy. To ask what time it is, you say *myö-shi-eyo*? Literally this means *how many hours is it?* To ask at what time something happens you would say either *myö-shi-e hakkyo-e kayo?* or *önje hakkyo-e kayo?* (Note the word *myö* is spelt *myöch'*, but in normal speech the *ch'* is not pronounced).

The hours are counted by the pure Korean numbers, and the minutes by Sino-Korean numbers. 9 o'clock is *ahop-shi*; 2 o'clock is *tu-shi*; 3.35 is *se-shi samshipo-bun*; 12.02 is *yoldu-shi i-bun*. You can say *at* a certain time with the particle *-e*. Thus, *at 2.40* is *tu-shi saship-pun-e* and so on. You can say half past with the word *pan*. *Half past one* is *han-shi pan*.

Answer the question *myö-shi-eyo* for each of the following.



- 3 Give the polite style, the *-ko* form and the *-upshida* form of the following verbs.

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| a ha-                  | d pappü-                  |
| b tat- ( <i>shut</i> ) | e umjigi- ( <i>move</i> ) |
| c p'al-                |                           |

Check your answers carefully with the information about verbs that we have given you.

- 4 You are planning a trip away with your friend. Make up responses to his questions.



- a Ödi ka-lkkayo?  
 b Mwo ha-rö kögi kayo?  
 c Önje ka-lkkayo?  
 d Myö-shi-e manna-lkkayo?  
 e Ödi-sö manna-lkkayo?

5 You go to a restaurant with your two friends. One of you wants to eat **pulgogi**, another **kalbi**, and a third **naengmyön**. Write a dialogue which includes the following questions from the waiter and your answers to them. (You decide to have a beer each).

Can I help you?

Can you eat spicy food? (literally, do you eat well spicy food?)

Would you like anything to drink?

Mul-do türikkayo?

6 Make up five short dialogues based on the following information. The dialogue pattern is like this:

a Where are you going?

b (answer)

a What are you going to buy/do/drink/eat there?

b (answer)

Here is the information you need for the answers:

- a Kage ojingö      d Chip cha-  
 b Hakkyo yagu      e Shijang kwail  
 c Shiktang pulkogi

7 Here is a typical day for Mr Pak. Answer the questions that follow.

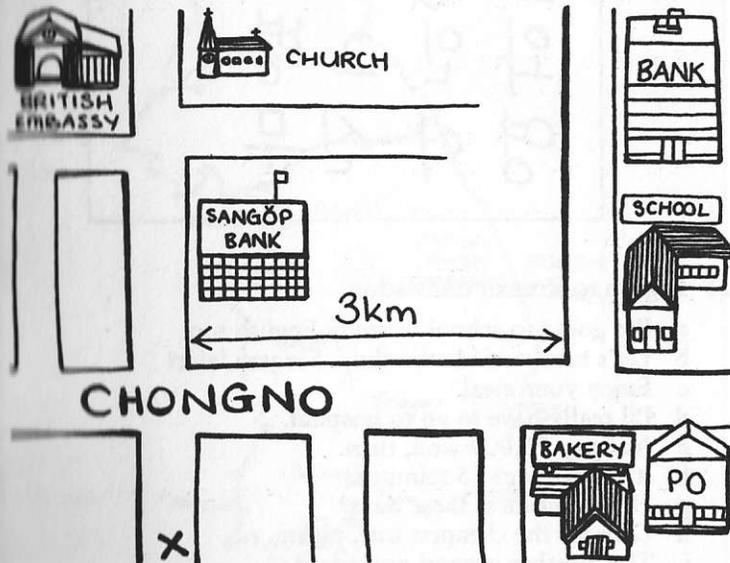
- 7.30 *get up*  
 9.00 *shopping*  
 10.00 *meet Mr Lee's wife at Hilton Hotel*  
 1.00 *lunch at Chinese restaurant*  
 2.00 *doctor's appointment*  
 6.00 *home for meal*  
 7.30 *cinema*  
 11.00 *bed*

- a 박선생님은 몇시에 일어나요?  
 b 점심 때는 뭘 먹어요?  
 c 밤에는 어디 가요?  
 d 몇시에 자요?

8 Read the following questions and answer each one negatively with a full sentence (*no, I'm not* or *no, I don't*). Try to use the long negative pattern for one or two of the questions. Then make up another sentence saying what you do instead.

- a Ch'ukku choa haeyo?  
 b Maeun kö chal mögöyo?  
 c Tellebijön-ul mani pwayo?  
 d Norae-rul chal pullöyo?  
 e Chunggung mal paewöyo?

9 Look at the following street plan and answer the questions with full Korean sentences.



- a Kyohoe-esö yöngguk taesagwan-un möröyo?  
 b I-kunch'ö-e hanguk oehwan ünhaeng-i issöyo?  
 c Hakkyo-ga ödi-eyo?  
 d Hakkyo-ga kakkawöyo?  
 e Uchegug-un taesagwan-poda tö möröyo?  
 f Hakkyo-e ka-myön shigan mani köllyöyo?  
 g Uchegug-i ödi-eyo?

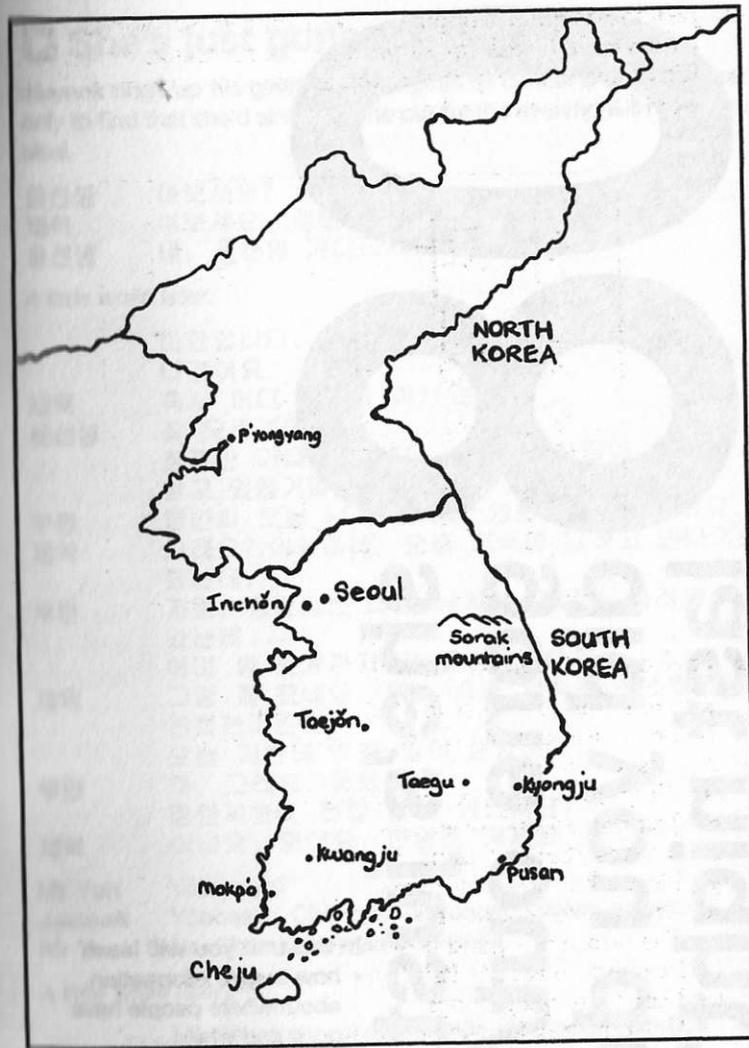
kyohoe church  
 hakkyo school  
 chegwa bakery

- 10 Jaemin has gone shopping. Have a look at his shopping list. How would he ask the shopkeeper for the things on the list? What might he say if the apples are too expensive? How would he ask the total cost?

사과 3 상자  
오징어  
와인 2 병  
영어 신문

- 11 English to Korean translation.

- I'm going to school to study English too.
- Let's meet outside the shop. See you later!
- Enjoy your meal.
- I'll really have to go to hospital.
- Just pay 15,000 won, then.
- It takes about 15 minutes.
- How's business these days?
- Give me the cheapest one, please.
- The weather is good nowadays.
- I came to meet Mr Pak from the Korean embassy.
- I can't eat spicy things.
- Does the bus for the post office stop at this stop?



# 08

## she's just gone out/what did you do last night?

In this unit you will learn

- how to give information about where people have gone and why
- how to give information about what happened in the past
- several important verb and clause endings
- one way of saying 'because'
- a way of asking for something to be done for your benefit

### ▶ She's just gone out

Jaemok rings up his girlfriend Chŏngmin to cancel a date with her, only to find that she'd already gone out for the evening with someone else!

윤선생 여보세요?  
 재복 여보세요. 정민씨 좀 바꿔주세요.  
 윤선생 네. 잠깐만 기다리세요.

*A little while later.*

미안합니다. 조금 전까지 있었는데, 방금 나갔어요.  
 재복 혹시 어디 갔는지 아세요?  
 윤선생 잘 모르겠어요.  
 잠깐만 기다려 보세요. 우리 집사람이 아마 알고 있을거예요.  
 부인 정민씨 오늘 남자 친구랑 영화 보러 나갔어요.  
 재복 그래요? 이상하네. 오늘 저녁에 나하고 만나기로 했는데.  
 부인 저런, 정민씨는 다른 남자랑 데이트 하러 갔는데...  
 재복 아마 밤 늦게까지 안 들어올거예요.  
 그럼 잘 됐네요. 오늘 저녁 약속을 취소하려고 전화했거든요.  
 부인 오늘 저한테 바쁜 일이 생겼어요.  
 아, 그래요. 잘됐네요.  
 재복 정민씨한테 전할 말이 있으세요?  
 아니요, 없어요. 안녕히 계세요.  
 Mr Yun Yŏboseyo?  
 Jaemok Yŏboseyo. Chŏngmin-ssi chom pakkwo-juseyo.  
 Mr Yun Ne. Chamkkan-man kidariseyo.

*A little while later.*

Mian hamnida. chogŭm chŏn-kkaji issŏn-nŭnde, panggŭm nagassŏyo.  
 Jaemok Hokshi ōdi kannunji aseyo?  
 Mr Yun Chal morŭgessŏyo.  
 Chamkkan-man kidaryŏ-boseyo. Uri chipsaram-i ama al-go iss-ŭlkŏeyo.  
 Mrs Yun Chŏngmin-ssi onul namja ch'ingu-rang yŏnghwa po-rŏ nagassŏyo.  
 Jaemok Kŭraeyo? Isang ha-ne. Onŭl chŏnyŏg-e na-hago manna-giro haennŭnde...

- Mrs Yun** Chǒrŏn, Chǒngmin-ssi-nun tarun namja-rang deit'u ha-rŏ kannŭnde. . . .  
Ama pam nŭtke-kkaji an torao-ikŏeyo.
- Jaemok** Kŭrŏm chal toenneyo. Onŭl chǒnyŏk yaksog-ul chwiso ha-ryŏgo chǒnhwa haet-kŏdunyo.  
Onŭl chǒ-hant'e pappun ir-i saenggyŏssŏyo.
- Mrs Yun** A, kŭraeyo. Chal toenneyo.  
Chǒngmin-ssi-hant'e chǒn hal mar-i issuseyo?
- Jaemok** Aniyo, ŏpsŏyo.  
Annyŏngghi kyeseyo.

## Phrases and expressions

- ŏdi kannŭnji aseyo? *do you know where (she) has gone?*  
ama al-go issŭ-ikŏeyo *will perhaps know*  
isang ha-ne *(it is) strange!*  
chǒrŏn *oh dear!, Oh no!*  
chal twoenneyo. *it's turned out well, it's all for the better*  
. . . hant'e chǒn hal *do you have a message for . . . ?*  
mar-i issuseyo?

pakku- 바꾸-	change
chogŭm chǒn 조금 전	a little while ago
chogŭm 조금	a little, a bit
chǒn 전	before
chǒn-e 전에	previously
-kkaji -까지	until
-(ŏ)ss- -었	(used to form the past tense, see note 4)
panggŭm 방금	just now
naga- 나가-	go out
hokshi 혹시	maybe, perhaps, possibly
onŭl 오늘	today
namja ch'ingu 남자 친구	boyfriend
-(i)rang -(이)랑	with (-irang after consonants)
yŏnghwa 영화	film, movie
isang ha- 이상하-	is strange, bizarre
chǒnyŏk 저녁	evening, supper
deit'u ha- 데이트하-	to date
pam 밤	night
nŭtke 늦게	late
torao- 돌아오-	come back, return
yaksok 약속	appointment

chwiso ha- 취소하-	cancel
-ryŏgo -려고	with the intention of (see note 5)
chǒnhwa ha- 전화하-	telephone (verb stem)
pappŭn 바쁜	busy
-kŏdŭnyo -거튼요	(see note 6)
saenggi- 생기-	to occur, happen, take place
chǒn ha- 전화-	communicate

## Grammar

### 1 Continuous states

In English we have a present continuous tense, used in sentences like *I am going, he is sitting*. This continuous tense is indicated by the ending *-ing*. In English we use the continuous tense fairly frequently, whereas in Korean the continuous form is used only for special emphasis, to stress that something is going on continuously. This means that when in English you meet a verb form that ends in *-ing*, you must not automatically assume that you should translate it by a Korean continuous form; in most cases you should probably not do so.

Let's take an example to illustrate this. In English it is quite common to say a sentence like *I'm going home*. This uses the continuous tense. It would be very unusual to translate this by the Korean continuous tense, and you would only do so if you particularly wanted to stress the process or the ongoing action of your going home. You would be far more likely to use the normal Korean present tense form *na-nun chib-e kayo*.

There are certain circumstances in which the Korean continuous form is used however, and you should note these. It is often used with the verb *to know*. The phrase *al-go issŏyo* literally means *I am knowing*, and the Korean emphasis is *I am in a state of knowing that*, and sometimes has the force *I already know that (you didn't need to tell me)*. You meet that form in this unit.

Other common uses are to stress what you are in the process of doing right now. Thus, as answers to the question *mwol haeyo?* (*what are you doing?*), you might say:

chaek ilg-ŏyo  
chaek ilk-ko issŏyo

They both mean *I'm reading a book*, but the second one stresses that you are in the process of reading the book even as you speak, that is what you are busy with and in the middle of doing.

Generally you should only use the present continuous tense when you are sure that you want to stress that particular meaning of continuous action.

To make the form, take the verb stem and add *-ko iss-*, for example, in the polite style, *-ko issöyo*. You will not normally find negatives in the continuous pattern; you would simply use a normal verb form, for example an *ilgöyo* (*I'm not reading*).

## 2 Probabilities

You will remember that we said in the last unit that the probable future form *-ülköeyo* can also be used simply to mean 'probably'. You have an example in this dialogue in the phrase *ama al-go issülköeyo* (*my wife will probably know, perhaps my wife will know*). Notice that this isn't a proper future tense; it is just a way of expressing probability.

## 3 Having a go at . . .

You have already learned the verb *kabo-*, which we told you meant 'go and see'. It is not really one verb at all, however, but a compound of the verb *ka-* (*go*) and the verb *po-* (*see*). You can make other compound verbs by adding the verb *po-* to another verb. You must take the other verb in the polite style *-yo* form, knock off the *-yo*, and then add on the verb *po-*. Here are some examples:

stem	polite	minus -yo	plus po-	meaning
ka-	kayo	ka-	ka-bo-	go and see
mök-	mögöyo	mögö-	mögö-bo-	eat and see
				have a go
				at eating
kidari-	kidaryöyo	kidaryö-	kidaryö-bo-	wait and see
				try waiting

The two most common uses for this pattern are as follows:

- It is often used in the polite honorific style to mean *please have a go at* (verb) *and see, please try out* (verb)ing. For example, *kidaryö-boseyo* in this lesson means *please wait and see, please try waiting, please have a go at waiting*.

- In the past tense it means *have you tried* (verb)ing?, *have you had a go at* (verb)ing?, e.g. *t'enisu-rul* (*tennis*) *hae-bwassöyo?* (*have you ever played tennis? have you ever tried playing tennis?*) (how to make the past tense is in the following point).

## 4 The past tense

The past tense in Korean is used very similarly to the past tense in English to say what someone did or was doing in the past. You just need to learn how to form it and, fortunately, that is fairly easy too. Take the verb you want in the polite style (e.g. *mögöyo*, *arayo*, *kidaryöyo*, *anjayo*), take the *-yo* off the end and add *-ss*. What you now have is the past stem (previously you have been learning the present stem of verbs). This past stem can then be made into a verb form in the normal way, by adding, for example, the polite style ending *-öyo*:

stem	polite	minus -yo	plus -ss	polite past
mök-	mögöyo	mögö	mögöss-	mögössöyo
a-l-	arayo	ara	arass-	arassöyo
kidari-	kidaryöyo	kidaryö	kidaryöss-	kidaryössöyo
anj-	anjayo	anja	anjass-	anjassöyo

Remember that you can put all sorts of endings on the past base, just as you can on the normal verb bases that you have learned previously. Sometimes the forms you make will look a bit odd because of the rules of sound change – the *-ss-* might disappear into another sound, but it will still be there in Korean writing. For example, with the past base *mögöss-* you could make: *mögössöyo*, *mögöt-kuna* (*mögöss-* + *kuna*), *mögöt-ko* (*mögöss-* + *ko*), *mögön-neyo* (*mögöss-* + *neyo*), etc.

Remember that the forms *haennünde* and *kannünde* are also past tense forms in which the *-ss-* of the past tense has become *n* by the rules of sound change. These two forms are thus the past bases *haess-* and *kass-* with the imminent elaboration *-nünde* added to them. This past tense *-nünde* form is very common in Korean.

To make honorific past forms, take the present verb base, and add *-shyöss-* to give you the honorific past base (if the stem ends in a vowel), or *-üşhyöss-* (if the stem ends in a consonant). This can then be made into, for example, *anjüşhyössöyo* (*you* (*honorific*) *sat down*), from the honorific past base *anjüşhyöss-*.

It looks difficult at first, but with the practice in the exercises, you should soon crack it. Everything is regular, you just have to remember the right rules and apply them.

## 5 With the intention of . . .

Very early in this course you learnt how to say sentences such as *ppang sa-rō shinae-e kayo* (*I'm going to the city centre to buy bread*). The constructions were made by adding *-rō* to the verb in the first clause, to mean *in order to*. That construction can only be used with the two verbs *go* and *come* at the end of the sentence, however. This lesson introduces you to a way to say a similar thing, *in order to, with the intention of*, which can be used with other verbs as well. You add *-(ŭ)ryōgo* to the stem of the verb of the first clause (*-uryōgo* if the stem ends in a consonant). Here is a reminder of the example of the construction which you saw in the dialogue: *Ch'wiso ha-ryōgo chōnhwa haessōyo* (*I'm calling (literally, I have called) with the intention of cancelling (in order to cancel)*).

Here are some more examples:

*Yōngō paeu-ryōgo yōngō ch'aek sassōyo*  
(*I bought an English language book with the intention of learning English*)

*Ch'aek ilg-ŭryōgo tosōgwan-e kayo*  
(*I am going to the library in order to read books*)

*Kyōr(h)on ha-ryōgo ton-ul pōrōssōyo*  
*I earned some money with the intention of getting married*

yōngō	영어	English language
hangugō	한국어	Korean language
-ō	-어	language
kyōrhon ha-	결혼하-	get married
pō-i	벌-	earn

## 6 -kōdūnyo

The verb ending *-kōdūnyo* is a common form in colloquial speech, although it is a bit difficult to pin down precisely what it means in English.

The pattern is used when you are adding an explanation to something that you have already said. Look carefully at the

last sentence of Jaemok in the dialogue. He has just said 'it's turned out well then', and then he goes on to say another sentence which ends in *-kōdūnyo*. This sentence explains the reason why he has just said that it turned out well – because he was ringing to cancel the date in any case. In a way, therefore, *-kōdūnyo* means something like *it's because . . . , you see*, when you add an explanation to something. But you must have already said something else which the *-kōdūnyo* phrase is an explanation of! Work through the questions in the exercise carefully, thinking through why the *-kōdūnyo* form has been used in each case. If you can, try to mimic Koreans in the way they use this pattern. That's the best way to make sure you are using it properly.

The ending *-kōdūnyo* is added simply to the verb stem, either a present or a past stem, although the past is probably a bit more common.

If you are able to use it correctly, Koreans will be very impressed as it really does make your speech sound colloquial.

## 7 Saying 'and then' and 'because'

Along with the past tense, this grammar note is probably the most crucial part of this unit. It introduces you to a form which is used all the time in spoken and written Korean.

First, we will look at how to form it, and afterwards at what it means. It is used to end the first clause of a two clause construction, and you take off the *-yo* of the polite style present of the verb and add *-sō*. For example:

stem	polite	minus -yo	-so form
mōk-	mōgōyo	mōgō	mōgō-sō
mashi-	mashyōyo	mashyō	mashyōsō

The *-sō* pattern has two meanings. In both cases, imagine a sentence of the form (clause A)-*sō* (clause B).

- It can mean 'after having done A, then B', or 'A and then B', where there is a close sequential link between the two clauses (usually a link of time: *after A, then B*). An example would be: *hakkyo-e ka-sō kongbu halkōeyo*, which could be translated as follows:

*I'll go to school and then study*  
*After going to school, I will study*

Here are some more examples:

Ch'ingu-rul manna-sō sul chib-e kayo  
I meet (my) friend and then (we) go to the pub  
Hangug-e ka-sō hanguk ch'ingu-rul mannessōyo  
I went to Korea, and then I met a Korean friend

- It can mean 'because A, then B', and this is perhaps the meaning which you will use (and meet) most frequently. A good example would be:

Pi-ga wa-sō hakkyo-e mot kayo  
It's raining, so I can't go to school  
I can't go to school because it's raining

Here are some more examples:

Onŭl pappŭn ir-i saenggyō-sō yaksog-ul mot chik'yōyo  
Something has come up today, so I cannot keep the appointment (lit. a busy matter has come up)

Mōri-ga ap'a-sō sul-ul mot masyōyo  
My head hurts, so I cannot drink

## ▶ What did you do last night?

Yongt'ae has a new girlfriend, and his friend T'aegyū appears rather inquisitive – what's her name, where does she work, how did they meet, what do they do together?

- 용태** 태규씨 안녕하세요?  
**태규** 안녕하세요.  
요즘 재미가 어떠세요?  
**용태** 요즘 바빠요.  
여자 친구가 생겨서 더 바빠요.  
**태규** 그런 줄 알았어요.  
여자 친구 이름이 뭐예요?  
**용태** 김 정민이에요.  
작년에 서울 대학교를 졸업하고 지금은 현대 자동차에서 일하고 있어요.  
**태규** 어떻게 만났어요?  
**용태** 친구가 소개해 주었어요.  
처음에는 그렇게 마음에 들지 않았는데, 한 달 후에 파티에서 우연히 다시 만났어요.  
그때부터 자주 만나기 시작했어요.  
**태규** 지금은 거의 매일 만나서 데이트 하지요?  
**용태** 그런 편이에요.

- 태규** 어제 밤에도 내가 전화 했는데 없었어요.  
**용태** 어제 밤에 어디 갔었어요?  
어제 밤이요?  
기억이 안나요. 아마 어딘가 갔을거예요.  
**태규** 기억이 안나요? 그렇게 술을 많이 마셨어요?  
**용태** 누가 술을 마셔요?  
태규씨가 오히려 매일 술만 마시잖아요?  
**태규** 어쨌든 어제 어디 갔었어요?  
**용태** 노래방에 갔었어요.  
내 여자 친구는 노래방을 아주 좋아해요.  
노래방에서 나와서 어디 갔었어요?  
**태규** 탁구를 좀 쳤어요.  
**태규** 그게 다예요? 솔직히 말해보세요.  
**용태** 정말이에요. 아무 일도 없었어요.

- Yongt'ae** Taegyū-ssi annyōng haseyo?  
**T'aegyū** Annyōng haseyo.  
Yojūm chaemi-ga öttöseyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Yojūm pappayo. Yōja ch'ingu-ga saenggyō-sō tō pappayo.  
**T'aegyū** Kurōn-jul arassōyo. Yōja ch'ingu irum-i mwo-eyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Kim Chōngmin-ieyo.  
Changnyōn-e sōul taehakkyo-rul chorōpha-go chigūm-un Hyōndaē chadongch'a-esō ilha-go issōyo.  
**T'aegyū** Öttök'e mannessōyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Ch'ingu-ga sogae hae-juössōyo.  
Ch'ōum-enun kurōk'e maum-e tul-ji anannūnde, han tal hu-e p'at'i-esō uyōnhi tashi mannessōyo.  
Ku-ttae-but'ō chaju manna-gi shijak haessōyo.  
**T'aegyū** Chigūm-un kōuy maeil manna-sō deit'u hajiyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Kürōn p'yōn-ieyo.  
**T'aegyū** Öje pam-edo nae-ga chōnhwa haennunde öpsössōyo.  
**Yongt'ae** Öje pam-e ödi kassössōyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Öje pam-iyo?  
Kiōg-i an nayo. Ama ödinga kassul köeyo.  
**T'aegyū** Kiōg-i an nayo? Kurōk'e sul-ul mani masyössōyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Nuga sul-ul masyōyo?  
**T'aegyū** Taegyū-ssi-ga ohiryō maeil sul-man mashijanayo?  
**Yongt'ae** Öcchaettun öje ödi kassössyo?  
**Yongt'ae** Noraebang-e kassössōyo.  
Nae yōja ch'ingu-nun noraebang-ul aju choa haeyo.  
**T'aegyū** Noraebang-esō nawa-sō ödi kassössōyo?  
**Yongt'ae** T'akku-rul chom ch'yössōyo.  
**T'aegyū** Ku-ge ta-eyo? Solchikhi mal hae-boseyo.  
**Yongt'ae** Chōngmal-ieyo. Amu il-do öpsössōyo.

## Phrases and expressions

yojŭm chaemi-ga öttöseyo?	<i>how are you doing?</i>
kŭrön-jul arassöyo	<i>how are things these days?</i>
maüm-e tül-ji anayo	<i>I thought so</i>
... maüm-e tül-l-	<i>I don't like (her) (maum-e</i>
kŭrön p'yön-ieyo	<i>an turoyo)</i>
kiög-i an nayo	<i>(I) like ...</i>
ama ödinga kassül köeyo	<i>(we) tend to be sold/so (it's</i>
solchikhi mal hae-boseyo	<i>usually like that, etc.)</i>
	<i>I don't remember</i>
	<i>I expect (we) went somewhere</i>
	<i>or other; maybe ...</i>
	<i>tell me the truth!</i>

yojŭm 요즘	<i>nowadays</i>
pappu- 바쁘-	<i>is busy</i>
yöja ch'ingu 여자 친구	<i>girlfriend</i>
irŭm 이름	<i>name</i>
changnyön 작년	<i>last year</i>
taehakkyo 대학교	<i>university</i>
choröpha- 졸업하-	<i>graduate (verb stem)</i>
Hyöndae chadongch'a	<i>Hyundai car (company)</i>
현대 자동차	
chadongch'a 자동차	<i>car</i>
ch'a 차	<i>car (short form)</i>
il ha- 일하-	<i>work (verb stem)</i>
sogaeha- 소개하-	<i>to introduce</i>
öttök'e 어떻게	<i>how?</i>
ch'öum 처음	<i>at first</i>
kürök'e 그렇게	<i>like that (here: particularly)</i>
irök'e 이렇게	<i>like this</i>
maüm 마음	<i>mind, heart</i>
tal 달	<i>month</i>
hu 후	<i>after</i>
p'at'i 파티	<i>party</i>
uyönhi 우연히	<i>by chance, coincidentally</i>
tashi 다시	<i>again</i>
ttae 때	<i>time</i>
-put'ö -부터	<i>from</i>
chaju 자주	<i>often, frequently</i>
shijak ha- 시작하-	<i>begin, start</i>
köuy 거의	<i>nearly, almost</i>

maeil 매일	<i>everyday</i>
kiök 기억	<i>memory</i>
ödinga 어딘가	<i>somewhere or other</i>
nuga 누가	<i>who? (subject form)</i>
ohiryö 오히려	<i>rather, on the contrary</i>
öcchaettün 어쨌든	<i>anyway</i>
noraebang 노래방	<i>'karaoke' singing room</i>
nae 내	<i>my</i>
che 제	<i>my (humble form)</i>
t'akku 탁구	<i>table tennis</i>
ch'i- 치-	<i>to play (tennis, table tennis etc.)</i>
solchikhi 솔직히	<i>frankly, honestly</i>

## Grammar

## 1 For my benefit

You have learnt how to ask people to do things by using polite requests ending in -seyo. The construction you are about to learn enables you to make such requests even more polite, and to stress that they are for your benefit. Suppose you want to say 'please do it for me, please do it (for my benefit)'. Previously you would have said haseyo. Instead, take the polite style of the verb (haeyo), knock off the -yo (hae-), and add the verb stem chu- (give) and then add the verb ending you want. Usually you will still want to use the polite request ending, so you would make the form hae + chu + seyo, hae-juseyo (*please do it for me*). The literal meaning of the construction is *please do it and give* and you can see how the verbs make this meaning when they are put together, and imply that you are asking for something to be done for your benefit.

This is quite a common pattern. Here are a couple of examples:

Onül chömshim chom sa-juseyo?  
*Please will you buy my lunch for me today?*

I-usan chom pillyö-juseyo  
*Please lend me your (this) umbrella*

Hangung mal nömu öryöwöyo. Shwipke karüch'yö-juseyo  
*Korean is so difficult (or too difficult). Please teach it simply for me*

usan 우산	umbrella
pilli- 빌리-	borrow
pillyö-ju- 빌려주-	lend
shwipke 쉽게	easily

## 2 Beginning to do things

You can say that someone is beginning to do something in Korean by adding *-ki shijak ha-* to a processive verb stem (a verb of doing). Here are two good examples:

Hakkyo-esö ilbon mar-ul kongbu ha-gi shijak haeyo  
(We) are beginning to study Japanese at school

Jojum öttön yöngguk saram-i hangung mar-ul paeu-gi shijak haessöyo

Nowadays some English people have begun to learn the Korean language

## 3 Sentence endings with *-jiyo*

You can end sentences with the form *-jiyo* added to any stem. As you can see, it is a bit like the polite style (since it ends in *-yo*). It means something like *I suppose, you know, I guess, etc.*, and it gives your sentences a bit more flavour than the polite style. However, the exact meaning of *-jiyo* corresponds to a number of English meanings, depending on whether they occur in statements, yes-no questions, or suggestions. It is used when the speaker wants to draw the hearer in to what is being said. The following examples illustrate some of the ways it can be used:

Hangguk saram-ijiyö?	<i>I suppose you are Korean, aren't you?</i>
Chömschim pölsö mögöt-jiyo?	<i>You've eaten lunch already, haven't you?</i>
Chigüm chömschim mök-jiyo	<i>Let's have lunch now (I suggest we have lunch now)</i>
Sur-ul choaha-jiyo?	<i>I guess you like alcohol, don't you?</i>

## 4 The double past

Korean has what is known as a double past construction, which is a past tense of a verb formed in the normal way, with an

additional *-öss-* added. Thus, *mögössöss-* would be the double past base of *mök-*.

The precise meaning of the form is a bit more difficult to define and is beyond the scope of this book. It emphasizes the remoteness of a past event and shows that an event occurred and *was completed* in the distant past. What you do need to know about it, however, concerns its use with the two verbs *ka-* and *o-*, 'go' and 'come.' Compare the following two sentences:

Öje pam yögi wassöyo	<i>I came here yesterday</i>
Öje pam yögi wassössöyo	<i>I came here yesterday</i>

The implication of the first of these might well be that you are still here, you came and you remain. However, the implication of the second is that the action is over, that is, that you came, and that you went again and that it all took place in the past. The same would be true of *kassöyo* and *kassössöyo*.

This rule is something of a simplification, but it will explain most of the occurrences of the double past that you are likely to need to know about for the time being. Take a close look at the example in the dialogue to see that emphasis: *we came to this restaurant last night* (and, by implication, we left again afterwards). The act of our coming (and going) all took place last night.

## Practice

- Put the following sentences into the past tense.
  - 학교에 가요.
  - 맥주 많이 마셔요.
  - 약속을 못 지켜요.
  - 친구를 만나요.
  - 영화를 보고 싶어요.
  - 도봉산에 갈까 해요.
- Make the following into polite requests (asking someone to do something for your benefit).
  - Haseyo.
  - Please go shopping for me.
  - Chömschim saseyo.
  - Can you phone Mr Kim for me?
  - Please buy me some medicine.
  - Shijak haseyo.

## 3 Complete the following by filling in the blanks.

오늘 \_\_\_\_\_ 친구를 만나 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ 바쁜 일이 \_\_\_\_\_ 못  
만났어요. \_\_\_\_\_ 취소 \_\_\_\_\_ 전화 \_\_\_\_\_, 약속 못 \_\_\_\_\_.

했어요      그렇지만      하려고      아침에  
지켰어요      기로 했어요      생겨서      그러니까

## 4 Write out the following sentences, and in each case add a second sentence along the lines suggested in the brackets to explain what has just been said in the first sentence. This is practice for the -kōdūnyo pattern, and you might want to look back at the lesson notes for that pattern before you do the exercise.

- a Onül hakkyo-e mot kayo (head aches)  
b Ilyoillar-e shinae-e mot kayo (another appointment)  
c Onül pam t'akku mot ch'yōyo (arm (pal) has begun to hurt)  
d Noraebang-e kayo? Na-nun kayo (don't like noraebangs)  
e Jaemin-ssi mot kayo? Kuröm chal toennyeyo (I can't go either)

## 5 Read the following page from someone's diary and then answer the questions.

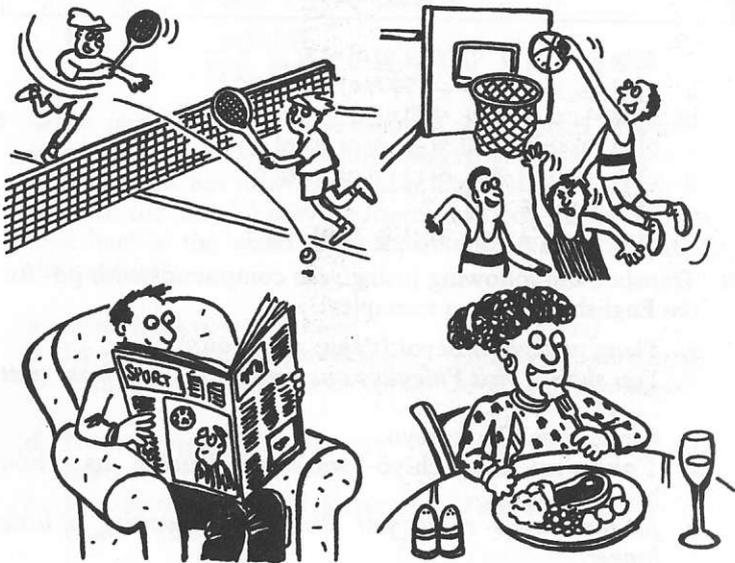
6월 (June)	6월 (June)
월 6 토니와 점심 약속	월 13 ㅈ
화 7	화 14 대구출장
수 8 회의	수 15 ↓
목 9 회의	목 16 ↓
금 10 김 선생 생일 파티	금 17 휴가 시작
토 11 대학 동창회	토 18 집 청소
일 12 집사람하고 쇼핑	일 19 도봉산 등산

휴가 holiday  
출장 business trip  
동창회 alumni meeting

오늘은 6월 7일 화요일이에요.

- a 이번 토요일에 무슨 약속이 있어요?  
b 언제가 김선생의 생일이예요?  
c 이번 일요일에 무엇을 하려고 해요?  
d 다음 일요일에는 어디 가려고 해요?  
e 언제부터 휴가에요?  
f 어제는 누구하고 점심을 먹었어요?
- 6 Translate the following (using verb compounds with po- for the English to Korean examples).
- a T'ang mashyō-boseyo! (t'ang: spicy soup)  
b You should visit Pulguksa one time (literally, Please visit ...!)  
c Pappū-jiman ka-boseyo.  
d T'akku-rul mot ch'yō-bwassōyo? Kuröm han bönn hae-boseyo.  
e Jaemin hasn't come yet? Please (try) waiting a little longer.
- 7 Use the following pairs of information to make up Korean sentences, each with two clauses linked by -sō. The first three have the sense of 'because A, B', the last three are sequential, 'and then'.
- a busy matter has come up      can't go  
b no food in house      go to restaurant  
c business is not good      no money  
d let's go outside      and wait  
e go to Sangmin's      what shall we do?  
f go to city      buy some fruit
- 8 Translate the following into Korean.
- a I'm ringing to cancel my appointment. Something came up (you see).  
b Sangmin has just gone out to play table tennis.  
c At first I didn't particularly like kimch'i, but I got used to it. (get used to: iksuk haeji-)  
d When did you graduate?  
e We met by chance in a bar.  
f That's strange! Chris has come back already.  
g What did you do last night? Tell me the truth.

- 9 Ask your friend if they have tried doing the following things.  
Make up appropriate answers.



# 09

**we bought him  
that last year!  
I'm sorry, I really  
didn't know!**

In this unit you will learn

- how to disagree and to apologize
- about buying presents and traffic offences
- another way of saying that you can and can't do something
- more about honorifics
- modifier form of verbs

## ▶ We bought him that last year!

A husband and wife are deciding what to buy grandfather for his birthday. However, the task is not as easy as it sounds!

- 부인** 내일이 할아버지 생신이에요.  
**남편** 뭐? 벌써?  
**부인** 그래요. 무엇을 사드릴까 결정해야겠어요.  
**남편** 당신이 정할 수 없어요? 나는 바빠요.  
**부인** 항상 내가 결정하잖아요. 이번에는 좀 도와주세요.  
**남편** 좋아요. 잠바를 사 드릴까요?  
**부인** 잠바는 벌써 열 벌이나 갖고 계세요.  
**남편** 장바는 더 이상 필요 없어요.  
**남편** 그러면 셔츠는 어떨까요?  
**부인** 셔츠도 더 이상 필요 없어요.  
**남편** 그럼, 책은요?  
**부인** 할아버지는 독서를 싫어하시잖아요?  
**남편** 할머니는 독서를 좋아하시니까 대신 읽으시면 되잖아요.  
**부인** 농담하지 마세요.  
**남편** 좀 더 좋은 생각을 말해보세요.  
**남편** 우산은 어떨까요?  
**부인** 할아버지는 비 올때 나가지 않으시잖아요.  
**남편** 그럼 양말은?  
**부인** 작년에 사 드렸잖아요.  
**남편** 그럼 새 전기 면도기는 어떨까요?  
**부인** 그건 재작년에 사 드렸잖아요.  
**남편** 그리고 할아버지는 면도를 잘 안 하세요.  
**남편** 그것 보라구!  
**남편** 당신은 내 의견을 좋아하지 않잖아요.  
**남편** 내가 처음 말한대로 당신 혼자 결정하면 되잖아요.

- Pwuin** Naeir-i harabōji saengshin-ieyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Mwo? Pōlssō?  
**Pwuin** Kūraeyo. Muōs-ul sa-dūrilkka kyōlchōng hae-yagessōyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Tangshin-i chōng ha-l su ōpsōyo? Na-nun pappayo.  
**Pwuin** Hangsang nae-ga kyōlchōnghajanayo. I-bōn-enun chom towa-juseyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Choayo. Chamba-rul sa-dūrilkkayo?  
**Pwuin** Chamba-nun pōlssō yōl pōl-ina kat-ko kyeseyo. Chamba-nun tō isang p'iryō ōpsōyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Kurōmyōn shyōch'u-nun ōttōlkkayo?  
**Pwuin** Shyōch'u-do tō isang p'iryō ōpsōyo.

- Namp'yōn** Kurōm, ch'aeg-ūn-yo?  
**Pwuin** Halabōji-nun toksō-rul shirō hashi-janayo?  
**Namp'yōn** Halmōni-nun toksō-rul choa hashi-nikka taeshin ilgushi-myōn toe-janayo.  
**Pwuin** Nongdam ha-ji maseyo.  
**Pwuin** Chom tō cho-un saenggag-ul mal hae-boseyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Usan-un ōttōlkkayo?  
**Pwuin** Harabōji-nun pi o-l ttae naga-ji anushi-janayo.  
**Namp'yōn** Kurōm yangmal-un?  
**Pwuin** Changnyōn-e sa turyōt-janayo.  
**Namp'yōn** Kurōm sae chōnggi myōndogi-nun ōttōlkkayo?  
**Pwuin** Ku-gōn chaejangnyōn-e sa turyōt-janayo.  
**Namp'yōn** Kurigo harabōji-nun myōndo-rul chal an haseyo.  
**Namp'yōn** Ku-gōt poragu!  
**Namp'yōn** Tangshin-un nae ugyōn-ul choaha-ji anch'anayo.  
**Namp'yōn** Nae-ga ch'ōum-e mal han-daero tangshin honja kyōlchōngha-myōn toe-janayo!

## Phrases and expressions

- nun ōttōlkkayo? *how about . . . ?, what do you think about . . . ?*  
 kŭ-gōt poragu! *you see?!*  
 tangshin-un nae ūgyōn-ul choaha-ji anch'anayo *you don't like my suggestions, you see!*  
 mal han daero *as (I) said, like (I) said*

<b>namp'yōn 남편</b>	<i>husband</i>
<b>harabōji 할아버지</b>	<i>grandfather</i>
<b>saengshin 생신</b>	<i>birthday (honorific form)</i>
<b>saengil 생일</b>	<i>birthday (normal form)</i>
<b>muōs 무엇</b>	<i>what (full form of mwo)</i>
<b>kyōljōng ha- 결정하-</b>	<i>decide</i>
<b>tangshin 당신</b>	<i>you (often used between husband and wife)</i>
<b>chōng ha- 정하-</b>	<i>decide</i>
<b>towa-ju- 도와주-</b>	<i>to help</i>
<b>(!) su iss-/ōps- -(으) = 수 있/없-</b>	<i>(see note 4: can/can't)</i>
<b>pōn 번</b>	<i>time (as in first time, second time, many times)</i>
<b>i-bōn 이번</b>	<i>this time</i>
<b>chamba 잠바</b>	<i>jacket (jumper)</i>
<b>pōl 벌</b>	<i>(counter for clothes)</i>

katko kyeshi- 갖고 계시-	have, possess (for honorific person; polite style: <b>katko kyeseyo</b> )
kyeshi- 계시-	exist (honorific of <b>iss-</b> in its existential <i>there is/are</i> meaning)
issŭshi- 있으시-	have (honorific of <b>iss-</b> in its meaning of possession)
tō isang 더 이상	any more
p'iryō öpsöyo 필요 없어요	is not needed
p'iryō ha- 필요하-	is needed ( <b>p'iryō iss-</b> also exists but is less common)
shyöch'u 셔츠	shirt
toksö 독서	reading
shirö ha- 싫어하-	to dislike
halmöni 할머니	grandma
-(ü)nikka -(으)니까	because (clause ending, added to verb stems)
taeshin 대신	instead, on behalf of
saenggak 생각	idea
usan 우산	umbrella
-(ü)l ttae -(으)ㄹ 때	when
yangmal 양말	socks
chönggi myöndogi 전기 면도기	electric shaver
kü-gön 그건	that thing (topic)
chaejangnyön 재작년	the year before last year
myöndo(-rul) ha- 면도(를) 하-	shave
ügyöñ 의견	suggestion, opinion
honja 혼자	alone, on one's own

## Grammar

*Note:* The verb endings to some of the sentences in this unit (the ones with -sh- and -s- in them) are new, but we won't explain them until after the second dialogue.

### 1 Doing something for someone else

We learnt in the last unit how to ask someone to do something for your benefit by combining verbs with the verb **chu-** (*give*), as in **sa-juseyo** (*please buy it for me*). Now we are going to expand on this to look at how to talk about doing things for other people's benefit, for the benefit of someone else. The

dialogue you have just looked at is all about buying presents for grandad, and there is an implied for 'grandad's benefit' in many of the sentences. Once more you can make a compound verb which means literally 'buy and give', but which in practice means 'buy for him', 'buy for his benefit'.

There are two ways of doing this, and it depends on whether the person for whose benefit you are doing something is esteemed (honorific) or not. Grandad is definitely honorific and this means that instead of making the compound with the verb **chwu-** as you would expect, Korean uses a special verb **turi-** which means *give (to someone honorific)*. Compare the following two sentences, the first one means that you will have to decide what to buy for someone honorific, the second means you will have to decide what to buy for someone of your own or lower status (for example, your child):

Muös-ul sa-düri-lkka kyöljöng hae-yagessöyo  
Muös-ul sa-ju-lkka kyöljöng hae-yagessöyo

As you can see, Korean has two different verbs for *give*, depending on who you are giving to.

Here are some more examples using the two verbs for *give*:

Haraböji-ege ch'aeg-ul ilgö-düryössöyo  
(I) read a book for my grandfather  
Ch'ingu-ege ch'aeg-ul ilgö-juössöyo  
(I) read a book for my friend

Kim sönsaengnim-ul kidaryö-düryössöyo  
I waited for Mr Kim  
Ch'ingu-rul kidaryö-juössöyo  
I waited for my friend

### 2 Wondering, worrying and deciding

In English we make quite a few constructions with the word 'whether', e.g. *I'm wondering whether, I'm worrying whether (or, that), I'm trying to decide whether...* Korean makes these kind of sentences by adding **-lkka** or **-ülkka** to the base of the verb (this is the same ending as **-(ü)lkkayo?** (*shall we?*) without the **-yo**; you met it also in **-(ü)lkkha haeyo** (*I'm thinking of*)). The **-(ü)lkkha** pattern is used in the following construction: **Kim sönsaengnim ka-lkka**. This would form part of a sentence and it means *whether Mr Kim will go*. It could be used with

any of the following verbs: *kökjöng ha-* (worry), *kunggum ha-* (wonder), *kyöljöng ha-* (decide). Here are a couple of example sentences:

Yöja ch'ingu-ga yaksog-ul chik'i-lkka kunggumhaeyo  
*I wonder whether my girlfriend will keep the appointment*  
 Unjönsu-ga sul-ul mani mashi-lkka kökjönghaessöyo  
*I was worried that the driver had had a lot to drink*

This basic -(ü)lkka pattern is also found in a few common variations.

Sometimes -(ü)lkka is followed in colloquial speech by another word, *malkka*, to mean *whether* or *not*, as in the following example:

Kalkka malkka kökjöng haeyo  
*I'm worrying whether to go or not*

This form with *malkka* can only be used with verbs in which a person is wondering whether or not they themselves will do something. You could not use *malkka* in a sentence to mean *I'm wondering whether it will rain or not*, since there is no decision to be taken about whether or not to actually do something.

Often when Koreans are saying that they are worried that something might happen, they use a slightly longer form of the pattern: *-ülkka bwa*:

Pi-ga o-lkka-bwa kökjöng haeyo  
*I'm worried that it might rain*

Yöja ch'ingu-ga na-rul pöri-lkka-bwa kökjöng haeyo  
*I am worried that my girlfriend might dump me*

pöri- 버리- throw away

The other form is simply a contraction of this longer version.

### 3 Things you'll have to do

This unit should remind you of the way to say that you are going to have to do something (often the context concerns something that you'd really rather not have to do). The pattern is *-yagessöyo*, and it is added onto any processive verb base. The form literally means something like 'only if I do such and such will it do'; *-ya* is a particle which means 'only if'.

Naeil-kkaji I-il-ul kkünnae-yagessöyo  
*I'll have to finish the work by tomorrow*

Naenyön-enun kkok kyölhonhae-yagessöyo  
*I'll have to marry next year*

kkünnae- 끝내- finish (verb stem, to finish something)  
 kkok 꼭 without fail, definitely

### 4 You can and you can't

Korean has a very common way of saying that you can or can't do something (in the sense of being able to carry it out, rather than knowing how to). Take a processive verb stem (a verb of doing), add the ending *-l su* if the stem ends in a vowel and *-ül su* if it ends in a consonant, and then add either *issöyo*, to say you can do the verb, or *öpsöyo*, to say that you can't. For example:

mög-ul su issöyo	<i>I can eat it</i>
mög-ul su öpsöyo	<i>I can't eat it</i>
ka-l su issöyo	<i>I can go</i>
ka-l su öpsöyo	<i>I can't go</i>

It's as simple as that! But you must practise it until you can do it fast. The exercises should give you plenty of practice. Here are two examples:

Ilcchik torao-l su öpsöyo  
*I won't be able to get home early*

Chö-hanja-rul ilg-ül su issöyo?  
*Can you read those Chinese characters over there?*

ilcchik 일찍 early

### 5 Retorting

Sometimes people say things which are really stupid and Korean provides a nice (and not too rude) way of pointing that out and implying (just gently) that the person should have known better. This dialogue has lots of examples. The man keeps suggesting what to buy for granddad for his birthday and the wife thinks his suggestions are a bit silly. For example, he suggests buying something they bought last year. The implication is that the

man should know what they bought for granddad last year, so he shouldn't have been so stupid as to suggest buying it again. Therefore the wife says:

Changnyŏn-e sat-janayo (from sa-ss-, past base of sa-)  
*We bought that last year!*

Note the implication: you should know we bought him that last year, stupid! What did you go and suggest it again for?

One of the very common uses of the pattern is to give an answer when someone asks you something obvious, to which they should really know the answer. Suppose someone met you and you were dressed all in black and they asked you why. You could say 'because I'm going to a funeral!' and you would put -janayo onto the stem of the main verb of the sentence. Suppose you are going to get married and someone asked you why. You might respond:

Sarang ha-janayo!  
*It's because I love them, stupid!*

sarang ha- 사랑하- love

It's a very useful pattern, and one that makes your Korean sound natural and colourful.

The ending -janayo (spelt -janhayo) attaches to a present or a past base, and to honorific bases (note the sound change ss to t when -janayo is added to past bases).

## 6 Having one right there

You know how to say that someone has something by using the verb issŏyo. Korean has another verb form, which stresses a bit more the act of possessing: katko iss- and katko kyeshi- (the second one is the honorific form and is usually found in the polite honorific form katko kyeseyo).

Often it is has the force 'I have one right here', 'I have one with me now'. Imagine a situation in which someone wants a lighter. Someone else in the room has one and as he fumbles in his pockets, he might well say, na-nun katko issŏyo. This stresses that he has one with him right there.

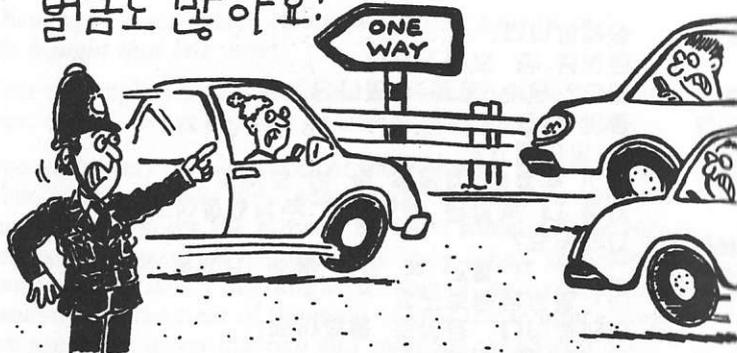
This is a form you need to be able to recognize rather than to actually use frequently yourself.

## I'm sorry, I really didn't know!

A policeman catches a driver going the wrong way up a one-way street.

- 경찰 실례합니다.  
면허증 좀 보여주세요.  
문경수 왜요? 무슨 문제가 있나요?  
경찰 정말 몰라서 그러세요?  
문경수 뭘 말이에요?  
경찰 여기 주차한 차들을 한 번 보세요.  
차들 다 똑같은 방향으로 주차했잖아요.  
문경수 그래서요?  
경찰 그러면 저 빨간 색 일방 통행 표지를 못 봤어요?  
문경수 아! 일방통행로군요.  
경찰 미안합니다. 정말로 몰랐어요.  
문경수 큰 실수를 하셨어요.  
일방통행로에 잘못 들어오면 아주 위험하고 벌금도 많아요.  
문경수 정말 표지판을 못 봤어요.  
한 번만 봐 주세요.  
경찰 다음부터 조심하세요.  
벌금은 오 만원입니다.  
문경수 고맙습니다. 수고하세요.
- Hyeongoh'al Shillye hamnida.  
Myŏnhŏcchŭng chom poyŏ-juseyo.  
Wunjŏnewu Waeyo? Musŭn munje-ga innayo?  
Hyeongoh'al Chŏngmal mallasŏ kŭrŏseyo?  
Wunjŏnewu Mwol mar-ieyo?  
Hyeongoh'al Yŏgi chuch'ahan ch'a-dŭr-ul han pŏn poseyo.  
Ch'a-rul ta ttok kat'ŭn panghyang-uro chuch'a haet-janayo.  
Wunjŏnewu Kŭraesŏyo?  
Hyeongoh'al Kŭrŏmyŏn chŏ-ppalgan saek ilbang t'onghaeng p'yoji-rul mot pwassŏyo?  
Wunjŏnewu A! ilbang t'onghaengno-gunyo.  
Mianhamnida. Chŏngmallo mollasŏyo.  
Hyeongoh'al K'ŭn shilsu-rul hashyŏssŏyo.  
Ilbang t'onghaengno-e chalmot turŏ o-myŏn aju wihŏm ha-go pŏlgum-do manayo.  
Wunjŏnewu Chŏngmal p'yojip'an-ul mot pwassŏyo.  
Hanbŏn-man pwa-juseyo.  
Hyeongoh'al Taŭm-put'ŏ choshim haseyo.  
Pŏlgŭm-un oman won-imnida.  
Wunjŏnewu Komapsŭmnida. Sugo haseyo.

아주 위험하고  
벌금도 많아요!



### Phrases and expressions

mwol mar-ieyo?	<i>what are you talking about?</i>
chöngmal molla-sö	<i>do you really not know</i>
küröseyo?	<i>(what you're doing)?</i>
küraesöyo?	<i>so what?</i>
chöngmal mollasöyo	<i>I really didn't know/realize</i>
hanbön-man pwa chuseyo	<i>please let me off just this once!</i>
sugohaseyo!	<i>work hard! (said to someone doing their job)</i>

kyöngch'al 경찰	<i>policeman</i>
unjönsu 운전수	<i>driver</i>
myönhöccchüng 면허증	<i>(driving) licence</i>
poyö-ju- 보여주-	<i>to show</i>
waeyo 왜요?	<i>why?</i>
musün 무슨	<i>what (kind of)</i>
munje 문제	<i>problem</i>
chuch'a han 주차한	<i>parked</i>
chuch'a ha- 주차하-	<i>to park</i>
ttok 똑	<i>exactly, precisely</i>
	<i>(often used with kat'-)</i>
kat'ün 같은	<i>same</i>
kat'- 같-	<i>be the same, be similar</i>
panghyang 방향	<i>direction</i>
ppalgan 빨간	<i>red</i>
saek 색	<i>colour</i>

ilbang t'onghaeng 일방 통행	<i>one way</i>
ilbang t'onghaengno 일방 통행로	<i>one-way street</i>
p'yoji 표지	<i>sign, signpost</i>
k'un 큰	<i>big</i>
shilsu 실수	<i>mistake</i>
shilsu ha- 실수하-	<i>make a mistake</i>
turö o- 들어오-	<i>to enter</i>
wihöm ha- 위험하-	<i>be dangerous</i>
pölgüm 벌금	<i>fine, penalty</i>
p'yojip'an 표지판	<i>signpost</i>
choshim ha- 조심하-	<i>be careful, be cautious</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Questions with -nayo

The particle -na is often used as a way of asking questions and when you use it in the polite style, you should also add the polite particle -yo to give -nayo. (Without the -yo it is an informal question which you could only use between friends or to ask a question of someone younger or of lower status than you.)

It is added on to the stem of any verb (either the present stem or the past stem). Here are a couple of examples:

Chumun haen-nayo?	<i>Have you ordered? (haess- past base of ha-)</i>
shinmun kögi innayo?	<i>Is the newspaper over there? (from iss-)</i>
Ödi ka-na?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Chömshim mögön-na?	<i>Did you have lunch? (mögöss - past base of mök-)</i>

### 2 Honorific forms

It's now time that we talked a bit more systematically about honorific verbs. You have already learnt that honorifics are used in Korean to show respect to the person you are talking about and in the present tense this is often done by using the form which you have learned as the 'polite request form' -(u)seyo. In actual fact this form is not only used to make requests, it is also used to make statements or to ask questions about anyone to whom you wish to show respect. It is very common in Korean, and you will use it whenever you meet and

talk to new people of equivalent or senior status (to ask them questions, for example).

Actually, the form *-(ũ)seyo* is an abbreviation of the honorific particle *(ũ)shi*, plus the vowel *-õ*, plus the polite particle *-yo*. This contracts to give the form you know *-(u)seyo*.

Just as there are present and past stems, so also there are honorific stems. The honorific present stem is the usual stem plus the honorific particle *-(ũ)shi*. The honorific past stem is the usual stem plus *-(ũ)shyõss-*:

<i>stem</i>	<i>hon stem</i>	<i>hon past stem</i>
anj-	anjüşhi-	anjushyõss-
ilk-	ilgüşhi-	ilgushyõss-
ka-	kashi-	kashyõss-
o-	oshi-	oshiyõss-

You can add verb endings to the present honorific stem, as you would a normal verb with a stem ending in *-i-*. Everything about the honorific stems is regular apart from the present polite style which contracts to *-(ũ)seyo*, as you have already learnt:

Harabõji-nun unhaeng-e kashi-go halmõni-nun uch'egug-e  
kaseyo

*Granddad is going to the bank and grandma is going to the  
post office*

Kim sõnsaengnim unjõn            *Can Mr Kim drive?*  
hashi-l su issõyo?

Kim sõnsaengnim unjõn            *Can Mr Kim drive? (identical)*  
ha-l su issũseyo?

Põlssõ kashyõt-kuna!            *He's already gone (surprise,*  
(from kashyõss-, past            *surprise!)*  
honorific base of ka-)

T'akku-rul ch'ishyõss-õyo        *He played table tennis*

### 3 Introducing modifiers: making verbs into nouns

You now need to learn about something called modifiers, which are a kind of verb. First, we will show you how to make them, and then we will worry about what they mean. In this unit we shall just look at one of their uses and then in Unit 11 we shall look at the other uses.

How you make the modifier form of a verb depends on whether it is a processive or a descriptive verb.

#### Processive verbs

For processive verbs, add *-nũn-* to the verb stem. Thus the modifier form of *ka-* is *kanũn*, the modifier form of *mõk-* is *mõngnũn* (written *mõknũn*), and so on. You will find that when you add *-nũn* to verb stems that end in consonants, sound changes will take place. For *mõk-*, therefore, the *hangul* letters will literally read *mõk-nũn*, but the pronunciation (according to the rules of sound change you learnt at the beginning of the book) will be *mõngnũn*.

To make a past tense modifier form for processive verbs you add *-(ũ)n* to the stem, so that the past tense modifier forms of *mõk-* and *ka-* are *mõgũn* and *kan*. You cannot do this with the verbs *iss-* and *õps-* (these verbs behave like processive verbs, so that the modifier forms are *innnũn* and *õmnũn* in the present tense – they do not have past tense modifier forms).

#### Descriptive verbs

For descriptive verbs, simply add *-n* if the stem ends in a vowel, and *-ũn* if it ends in a consonant. As you can see this is identical to the past tense modifier form for processive verbs. There is no past tense modifier form for the descriptive verbs.

Try to memorize these rules.

We will now look at just one meaning of the modifier form of verbs. Sometimes you want to talk about the act of doing things (doing verbs), as though they were nouns. In English, for example, we say things like *I like swimming* which means *I like the act of swimming*, and of course 'swimming' comes originally from the verb 'swim'.

Korean is able to express *the act of (verb)ing* by using a modifier form, plus the noun *kõt*, often abbreviated to *kõ*. Here are examples:

kanũn köt	<i>the act of going</i>
yõnghwa ponũn kõ	<i>the act of seeing a film</i>
yõgi annũn kõ	<i>the act of sitting here (from anj-)</i>

You can then simply add verbs like *choayo/choa haeyo/shirõ haeyo/an choa haeyo* afterwards to say what you think about those particular activities, e.g.:

Yõnghwa ponũn kõ choa haseyo?

*Do you like seeing films?*

Yõgi innũn kõ chom poseyo

*Please look at what is here (literally, the thing that is/exists here)*

P'yŏniji-rul ssunŭn kŏ shirŏ haeyo

I hate writing letters

Sul mashi-go unjŏn hanŭn ke wihom haeyo

It's dangerous to drink and drive

p'yŏniji 편지 letter  
ssŭ- 쓰- write

## Practice

1 Say that you are worried about the following things.

- That teacher will come (to a party).
- That there won't be enough food.
- That Mr Kim might not come.
- That your girlfriend might not like you any more.
- That it might rain.

2 Make the following passage honorific where appropriate. We have told you that normally you only need one honorific verb in a sentence, but for the purposes of this exercise use as many honorifics as you can. Look out for sentences that should not have them, however!

김선생님은 대학교 선생님이예요. 런던 대학교에서 한국말을 가르치고 일본말도 가르쳐요. 매일 아침 공원에 가서 산책해요. 개하고 같이 가요. 공원은 아주 좋아요. 김선생님의 개는 고기를 잘 먹어요. 작년부터 부인도 가끔 산책하기 시작했어요. 부인도 가면 둘이 식당에 가서 커피 한잔 마셔요.

3 Here are some situations. Make up Korean sentences to say what you will have to do because of them (using -yagessŏyo).

- Your head hurts.
- You can't meet your boyfriend tonight.
- You need to use a dictionary, but you don't have one.
- You go out and realize you've forgotten something. (You'll have to go back.)
- You want to know what's going on at the theatre. (You'll have to look at the newspaper.)

4 You're trying to decide about the following things. Say so in Korean, using a similar pattern to the one you were using in question 1.

- What to buy.
- What to wear. (wear: ip-)

- Where to sit.
- What to order.
- Where to go at the weekend.

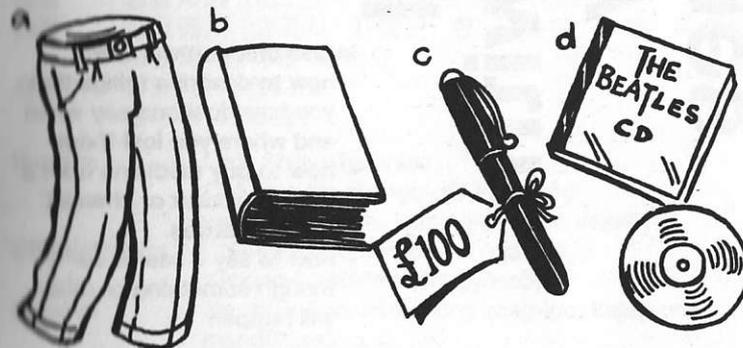
5 Translate the following sentences into Korean, using the pattern -(u)l su issŏyo/ŏpsŏyo that you have learnt in this lesson.

- Can I come too?
- Is this edible?
- Can you meet me tomorrow?
- I can't speak Japanese.
- I don't have any money, so I can't buy it.
- I can't park here.

6 Make up retorts to the following Korean statements using the -janhayo pattern.

- Wae an sassŏyo? (I bought it yesterday, didn't I!)
- I-saram-i namja(boy) (No, I'm already married, stupid!)  
-ch'ingu-eyo?
- Myŏndo an haseyo? (I already did it!)
- I-chaeg-ul ilgŏ-boseyo. (I hate reading, stupid!)
- I-saram-i nugu-seyo? (It's my wife! You only met her yesterday!)

7 Imagine you are talking to your sister and discussing with her what to buy your brother for a birthday present. You make the following suggestions of what to buy, but she manages to find a reason against it until the very last suggestion. Write out your suggestions and the answers she makes, trying to make the dialogue as interesting as you can. (Note: jeans, ch'ŏngpaji; CD, ssi-di)



# 10

## what did you do with it?/nasty headaches

In this unit you will learn

- how to describe things that you have lost and say when and where you lost them
- how to buy medicine from a Korean *yakkuk* or chemist
- 'when' clauses
- how to say it seems as though something or other will happen

### What did you do with it?

- 손님 저 실례합니다.  
저는 어제 친구들이랑 여기 왔었는데요, 가방을  
놓고 갔어요.  
종업원 제가 가서 한 번 찾아 보지요.  
가방이 어떻게 생겼어요?  
손님 네, 아주 크고, 검정색이고, 가죽으로 만들었어요.  
종업원 저기 서류 가방이 있는데, 저거예요?  
손님 아니요, 서류 가방이 아니에요.

*A little while later.*

- 종업원 없는 것 같은데요.  
뭐 중요한 게 들어 있나요?  
손님 예, 사실 아주 중요한 서류하고 책하고 은행카드가  
들어있어요.  
종업원 저런! 잠깐 기다려 보세요.  
사장님한테 한 번 물어볼게요.

*The manager comes.*

- 사장 안녕하세요? 무슨 일입니까?  
손님 제 가방을 잃어버렸어요.  
어제 여기서 식사하고 놓고 나왔어요.  
사장 몇시에 저희 식당에서 나가셨나요?  
손님 한 열 한 시 쯤이에요.  
사장 영업 끝날 때 쯤...  
아, 예, 생각나요. 오늘 아침 청소할 때 가방이  
하나 있었어요.  
손님 그걸 어떻게 하셨어요?  
사장 경찰서에 보냈어요.  
그 사람들이 보관하고 있을거예요.  
손님 경찰서가 어디인지 좀 가르쳐주시겠어요?  
사장 식당에서 나가서 좌회전 한 다음에 오른 쪽으로  
세번째 골목에 있어요.  
손님 정말 감사합니다.  
안녕히 계세요.

- Bonnim Chŏ, Shillye hamnida.  
Chŏ-nun ŏje ch'ingu-dŭl-irang yŏgi  
wassŏnnŭndeyo, kabang-ul nok'o kassŏyo.  
Ŏhngŏpwon Che-ga ka-sŏ han-pŏn ch'aja pojiyo.  
Kabang-i ŏttŏk'e saenggyŏssŏyo?  
Bonnim Ne, aju k'ŭgo, kŏmchŏng saeg-igo, kajug-uro  
mandŭrŏssŏyo.

**Chongöpwon** Chögi söryu kabang-i innünde, chö-gö-eyo?  
**Sonnim** Aniyö, söryu kabang-i anieyo.

*A little while later.*

**Chongöpwon** Ömnün köt kat'ündeyo.

Mwo chungyo han ke turö innayo?

**Sonnim** Ye, sashilaju chungyohan söryu-hago ch'aek-hago ünhaeng k'adu-ga turö issöyo.

**Chongöpwon** Chörön! Chamkkan kidaryö-boseyo.  
Sajangnim-hant'e hanbön murö-bo-ikkeyo.

*The manager comes.*

**Sajang** Annyöng haseyo? Musün ir-imnikka?

**Sonnim** Che kabang-ul iröbörössöyo.  
Öje yögi-sö shiksa ha-go no-k'o nawassöyo.

**Sajang** Myöt shi-e chöhuy shiktang-esö nagashyönnayo?

**Sonnim** Han yölhan-shi cchüm-ieyo.

**Sajang** Yöngöp kkünna-l ttae cchüm . . .

A, ye, saenggang nayo. Onül ach'im ch'öngso ha-l ttae kabang-i hana issössöyo.

**Sonnim** Ku-gö-l öttök'e hashyössöyo?

**Sajang** Kyöngch'alsö-e ponæssöyo.

Kü-saram-dur-i poġwan ha-go iss-ulköeyo.

**Sonnim** Kyöngch'alsö-ga ödi-inji chom karuch'yö-jushigessöyo?

**Sajang** Shiktang-esö naga-sö chwahoejön han taüme orün cchog-uro se-bön-cchae kolmog-e issöyo.

**Sonnim** Chöngmal kamsahamnida. Annyöngghi kyeseyo.

## Phrases and expressions

ömnün köt kat'ündeyo	<i>it doesn't look as though there is anything/are any</i>
musün ir-imnikka?	<i>how can I help you?, what's the problem?</i>
öttök'e saenggyössöyo? (. . . -hant'e) han-bön murö-bo-ikkeyo	<i>what does it look like? I'll just ask (such and such a person)</i>
kü-gö-l öttök'e hashyössöyo . . . -i/ga ödi-inji chom karuch'yö-juseyo	<i>what did you do with it? please tell me where (such and such) is</i>
chwahoejön han taüm-e uhoejön han taüm-e	<i>after doing a left turn after doing a right turn</i>

**sonnim** 손님  
**chö** . . . 저 . . .  
**kabang** 가방  
**no(h)-** 통-  
**ch'aja po-** 찾아보-  
**ch'aj-** 찾-  
**öttök'e** 어떻게  
**irök'e** 이렇게  
**kürök'e** 그렇게  
**saenggi-** 생기-  
**kömjöng** 검정  
**kajuk** 가죽  
**mandürössöyo** 만들었어요

*customer  
er . . . , hmm . . .  
a briefcase, a bag  
put down, leave  
have a look, look for  
search  
how?  
like this  
like that  
look (like)  
black  
leather  
be made of (past tense of  
mandul-, I irregular verb)  
make (I-irregular verb like  
p'al-, nol- etc)*

**mandül-** 만들-

**söryu** 서류  
**chungyo han** 중요한

*document  
important (modifier form, like  
an adjective)  
be important  
be contained, be included  
yes (politer form of ne)  
in fact  
a card (e.g. credit card)  
manager (honorific form)  
ask  
lose  
have meal  
come out  
(humble form of wuri, our, my)  
about, around, approximately*

**chungyo ha-** 중요하-  
**turö iss-** 들어 있-

**ye** 에

**sashil** 사실

**k'adu** 카드

**sajang(nim)** 사장(님)

**murö-bo-** 들어보-

**iröböri-** 잃어버리-

**shiksa ha-** 식사하-

**nao-** 나오-

**chöhüy** 저의

**han (number/time)** cchüm

**han** . . . 좀

**yöngöp** 영업

**kkünna-** 끝나-

**-(u)l ttae** -(으) 때

**ttea** 때

**saenggang na-** 생각나-

**ch'öngso ha-** 청소하-

**kyöngch'alsö** 경찰서

**bonae-** 보내-

**bogwan ha-** 보관하-

**chwahoejön** 좌회전

**uhoejön** 우회전

**cchae** 때

**kolmog** 골목

*business  
finish (as in it finishes)  
when (see note 4)  
time (when)  
remember, it comes to mind  
clean up  
police station  
send  
keep  
left turn  
right turn  
number (time)  
alley, small road*

## Grammar

### 1 Making plurals

You will have noticed that a Korean noun can be either singular or plural, depending on the context. In other words, Korean does not have one word for *dog* and another word for *dogs*; it has just one word *kae* which can mean either. It is very rare that there is any ambiguity or confusion because of this, however.

There is a plural particle which can be used to show explicitly that a word is plural – it is **-tül**. You can then add subject, object, topic (-i, -ül, -ün) or other particles (such as **-do** or **-hago**) onto the plural form. Thus you could have any of the following forms: **-dül-do**, **-dür-un**, **-dür-i**, **-dür-ul**, **-dül-hago**, **-dül-hant'e**, and so on.

### 2 Ending sentences with **-nũdeyo**

We have already studied the clause ending **-nunde**, to indicate that you have something more to say, that you are going to elaborate on what you have just said. You can also end a sentence with **-nũnde** by adding the polite particle **-yo** after it. The use is very like that for **-nũnde**, except that saying **-nũdeyo** allows you to make more of a pause than using **-nũnde**. Often **-nũdeyo** is used to explain who you are, where you have come from, or what you want to do. The following sentence would go on to give more specific information, either about what the person you are speaking to should do about it or what you would like to happen (on the basis of having explained who you are, for example!). This all sounds a bit confusing in writing, and it is perhaps best to explain by example. In the following sentences, the first could be ended in Korean with **-nũdeyo**. Notice how the second sentence often makes an explicit request, or homes in to ask something:

I'm from the BBC (nũdeyo)	I'd like to do an interview
I'd like to buy a bicycle (nũdeyo)	Can you show me your range?
I'm the brother of your friend (nũdeyo)	Pleased to meet you! May I have a seat?

Since **-nũdeyo** is a colloquial expression, you will sometimes find it used in other ways which do not seem to fit exactly

into the system we have described here. However, for using the form yourself, if you remember the rules we have given you, you won't go wrong.

Note also that **-nũdeyo** and the related **-nũnde** are added to the present stem of processive verbs, and on to the past stem of both processive and descriptive verbs. The form (ũ)ndeyo and the related (ũ)nde are only used for the present tense of descriptive verbs. Taking a processive verb and a descriptive verb in both past and present tenses, then, we would get the following forms:

	ha- ( <i>processive</i> )	cho- ( <i>descriptive</i> )
present	ha-nũdeyo	cho-ũndeyo
past	haen-nũdeyo	choan-nũdeyo

Remember that in the past examples the first of the two ns (before the hyphen) represents the double s of the past base which has become pronounced as an n through the pronunciation rules we described at the beginning of the course.

### 3 It seems like

You can say that 'it seems like something is happening' in Korean by using modifier forms of verbs plus **kõt kat'ayo**. **kat'** is a verb which means *is like*, so **pi-ga o-nun köt kat'ayo** means literally 'the act of raining it is like', or, in effect, *it seems like it's raining*. Remember that the modifier forms are different depending on whether the main verb is processive or descriptive.

Here are some examples:

hõnsaengnim-i TV-rul po-nũn kõt kat'ayo	<i>It seems like the teacher is watching TV</i>
Minho-ga ppang-ul möng-nũn kõt kat'ayo	<i>It seems like Minho is eating bread</i>
Yõnggug-un nalssi-ga nappu-n köt kat'ayo	<i>It seems like the weather is bad in England</i>
I chib-i choh-ũn köt kat'ayo	<i>This house seems to be nice</i>

### 4 When something happens

You have met many times the form (ũ)l added to the stem of verbs, for example in the endings: (ũ)l kka(yo), (ũ)l kka haeyo, (ũ)l kõeyo. In actual fact this (ũ)l is the future modifier. It is a

modifier just like -nŭn and -(ŭ)n, but it has a future meaning. This means that you can use the pattern you have just learnt (modifer + köt kat'ayo) to say *it seems like something will happen*:

Pi-ga o-l köt kat'ayo *It seems like it will rain*  
Ka-l köt kat'ayo *It seems as though she will go*

An even more important use of -(ŭ)l is when it is followed by the noun ttae which means *time*. The whole construction (verb stem)-(ŭ)l ttae means *when (verb) happens*. Have a look at the examples:

hakkyo-e ka-l ttae *when I go to school*  
pi-ga o-l ttae *when it rains*  
ömöni torao-l ttae *when Mum gets back*

Here are some examples in sentences:

Pang-esö nao-l ttae pang-ul ch'öngsoha-seyo  
*When you come out of the room, please clean it up*

Hanguk mar-ul karuch'i-l ttae haksang-dur-i manassöyo?  
*Were there many students when you taught Korean?*

## ▶ Nasty headaches

Mr Pak goes to the chemist to get some medicine for a nasty headache.

**약사** 어서 오세요.  
무슨 약을 드릴까요?  
**박선생** 네, 두통이 아주 심한데, 두통약 좀 주시겠어요?  
**약사** 네, 언제부터 아프기 시작했어요?  
**박선생** 어제부터 아프기 시작했어요.  
회사에서 일을 너무 많이 하고 스트레스를 많이 받았어요.  
아마 과로하고 스트레스가 원인인것 같아요.  
**약사** 그렇군요. 눈은 아프지 않으세요?  
**박선생** 네, 조금 아파요.  
**약사** 잠은 잘 주무세요?  
**박선생** 아니요. 머리가 너무 아파서 잘 못 자요.  
**약사** 알겠어요. 아마 스트레스하고 관련이 있는 것 같아요.  
이 약을 잡쉬 보세요.  
**박선생** 하루에 몇 번 씹 먹나요?

**약사** 두통이 심할 때는 네 시간마다 한 알 씹 드시고, 좀 나아지면 식후에 한 알 씹 하루 세 번 드세요.  
**박선생** 부작용 같은 것은 없나요?  
**약사** 이 약을 먹으면 졸음이 오니까 조심하세요. 그리고 쉽게 피로를 느껴도 놀라지 마세요.  
**박선생** 네, 감사합니다.  
**Yakea** Ösö oseyo.  
Musün yag-ul türilkkayo?  
**Mr Pak** Ne, tut'ong-i aju shim ha-nde, tut'ong yak chom chushigessöyo?  
**Yakea** Ne, önje-but'ö ap'u-gi shijak haessöyo?  
**Mr Pak** Öje-but'ö ap'u-gi shijak'aessöyo.  
Hoesa-esö ir-ul nömu mani ha-go sut'uresu-rul mani padassöyo.  
Ama kwaro-hago sut'uresu-ga wonin-i-n köt kat'ayo.  
**Yakea** Kurök'unyo. Nun-un ap'u-ji anuseyo?  
**Mr Pak** Ne, chogum ap'ayo.  
**Yakea** Cham-un chal chumuseyo?  
**Mr Pak** Aniyo. Möri-ga nömu ap'asö chal mot chayö.  
**Yakea** Algessöyo. Ama sut'uresu-hago kwallyön-i innun köt kat'ayo.  
I yag-ul chapswo-boseyo.  
**Mr Pak** Haru-e myöt pön sshik möngnayo?  
**Yakea** Tut'ong-i shim ha-l ttae-nun ne shigan-mada han al sshik tushi-go, chom naaji-myön, shikhu-e han al sshik haru sebön tuseyo.  
**Mr Pak** Pujagyong kat'un kös-un ömnayo?  
**Yakea** I yag-ul mög-umyön chorum-i o-nikka, choshim haseyo.  
Kurigo shwipke p'iro-rul nukkyö-do nolla-ji maseyo.  
**Mr Pak** Ne, komapsumnida.

## Phrases and expressions

ama sut'uresu-ga wonin-i-n köt kat'ayo	<i>it seems as though it's because of stress</i>
ne-shigan-mada han al sshik tüseyo	<i>take one tablet every four hours</i>
shikhu-e han al sshik se-bön tüseyo	<i>take one tablet three times a day after meals</i>
shwipke p'iro-rul nükkyö-do nolla-ji maseyo	<i>don't be surprised if you feel tired very easily</i>

yaksa 약사	pharmacist, chemist
shim ha- 심하-	is serious
önje 언제	when
hoesa 회사	company
sut'uresu 스트레스	stress
pat- 받-	receive
kwaro 과로	overwork
wonin 원인	reason, cause
kürök'unyo 그렇군요	ah, I see; it's like that, is it?!
nun 눈	an eye
cham 잠	sleep (noun)
chumushi- 주무시-	sleep (honorific equivalent of cha-)
kwallyön 관련	relation, link
chapswo po- 잡쉬보-	try eating (honorific form)
chapsushi- 잡수시-	eat (honorific equivalent of mok-)
han al 한 알	one tablet
naaji- 나아지-	get better
haru-e 하루에	per day
-mada -마다	each, every
shikhu 식후	after meals, after the meal
pujagyong 부작용	a side-effect
chorum 졸음	sleepiness, drowsiness
kat'ün köt 같은 것	(a) similar thing, something similar
shipke 쉽게	easily
p'iro 피로	fatigue, weariness
nükki- 느끼-	to feel
nolla- 놀라-	to be surprised, be shocked

## Grammar

### 1 The future marker -kess

-kess can be added to verbs to make future forms. An explanation of this is given in Unit 12 and you do not need to be concerned about it until then.

### 2 Immediate future

You have previously learnt to put sentences in the future with the form -(ü)lköeyo. Korean has another future form -(ü)lkkeyo, added to the present stem of processive verbs which expresses a more definite (rather than probable) future, something you will

certainly do, are promising to do or are just about to do. It is often used in circumstances where there is no doubt about whether or not you will be able to do the thing concerned. You can only use this form to say what you yourself will do, since you have control over your own actions. You cannot say what someone else will do, since you have no control over their actions and there is therefore always a certain element of doubt about them.

### 3 Asking polite questions

Korean often uses the ending -kessöyo added to the honorific stem of verbs to ask polite questions. Examples are: chigum kashiges-söyo? (*are you going now?*), chumun hashigessöyo? (*would you like to order?*). It can also be used to express requests: hae-jushigessöyo? (*would you do it for me?*).

### 4 Honorific verbs

Korean has several verbs which are only used in the honorific form (the non-honorific form is a completely different verb). In this lesson you meet the verb chumwushi- which is the honorific stem of the verb cha- (*sleep*). Here is a list of the common honorific verbs and their non-honorific equivalents. Notice especially the verb issöyo.

non-honorific	meaning	honorific	hon polite
cha-	sleep	chumushi-	chumwuseyo
mök-	eat	chapsushi-	chapsuseyo
iss-	exist, stay	kyeshi-	kyeseyo
iss-	have	issüşhi-	issuseyo
chuk-	die	tora-gashi-	tora-gaseyo
mök-/mashi-	eat/drink	tüşhi-	tuseyo

## Practice

1 This exercise is designed to help you practise the -(nu)ndeyo form. If we give you a Korean sentence ending in -(nu)ndeyo, you must provide a second sentence that fits with it. If we give you the second sentence in Korean, then you are meant to make up a first sentence with -(nu)ndeyo along the lines of the English that we suggest.

- a Yōngguk taesagwan-uy Tony-indeyo. (Create appropriate 2nd sentence)
- b (I've come from England) Kōgi-sō hangungmar-ul chogum kongbu haessōyo.
- c (I telephoned yesterday) Kim sōnsaengnim chom pakkwo-jushigessōyo?
- d Ōje ch'ingu-hago yōgi wan-nundeyo. (Create appropriate 2nd sentence)
- e (I want to buy a dictionary) Hana poyō-jushigessōyo?
- f Chō-nun Kim sōnsaengnim-uy puin-indeyo. (Where has Mr Kim gone?)
- 2 Make up a sentence for each of the following verbs. Put the verb into the 'it seems like' pattern with -(nū)n kōt kat'ayo.
- a 비가 와요.
- b 박선생님이예요.
- c 독서를 싫어해요.
- d 동대문 시장에 갔어요.
- e 김선생님 오세요.
- f 가방을 여기 놓았어요.
- 3 You have lost your jacket and the man at the lost property office asks you to describe it. (pocket: chumōni)



- 4 Join up the following sets of clauses, so that the meaning is 'when A, B.' Thus, the first one will be *When you eat your food, don't talk* or, in better English, *Don't talk when you're eating.*
- |                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a When you eat food            | don't talk               |
| b When you park your car       | take care                |
| c When you are going into town | call me                  |
| d When the film's over         | let's go to a restaurant |
| e When I arrived home          | I had a beer             |
| (toch'ak ha-, arrive)          |                          |
| f When you go out              | let's go together        |

- 5 Translate the following sentences into English.

- a 어쨌든 지금 무엇을 하기로 했어요?  
b 우리 여자 친구 못 봤어요? 보면 저한테 전화하세요.  
c 좀 나아지면 약을 더 이상 먹지 마세요.  
d 언제 졸업할거예요? 그 다음에 무슨 계획이 있어요?  
e 이 서류가 중요해요? 중요하지요! 내 면허증이잖아요!  
f 데이트를 할 때 영화 보러 자주 가요.

- 6 Translate the following into Korean.

- a You've made a big mistake!  
b If you go into the city late at night it's dangerous.  
c Would you show me that dictionary? Where did you buy it?  
d Is there a problem? Yes, I seem to have lost my medicine.  
e I've had so much stress lately and I can't sleep at night.  
f You've lost your bag? What was inside?  
g You don't like my ideas!  
h So what did you do?
- 7 You have a headache and your friend, who has gone out while you were asleep, leaves you some tablets with a note about when to take them. What are his instructions?

심할 땐 네 시간마다

두 알 드세요.

좀 나아지면,

점심 때만 식전에 한 알씩

드세요

# Would you like to try it on? do you think it suits me?

In this unit you will learn

- how to shop for clothes
- commenting on prices, quality and style
- comparing one thing with another
- informal styles of speech (used between close friends)
- more about modifiers and honorifics

## Would you like to try it on?

Minho and Pyöngswu go to Namdaemun market to buy some clothes.

### 들어보시겠어요?

민호 저 셔츠 좀 보라. 정말 좋다.  
 영수 그래? 내 생각에는 디자인이 좀 구식같다.  
 민호 아니야. 내 마음에 꼭 들어.  
 아가씨, 저 셔츠 얼마예요?

점원 A 팔천 원이에요.  
 민호 와, 정말 싸다.  
 영수 에이, 그런데 이거 봐. 질이 별로 안 좋아.  
 민호 글썄, 그럼 다른 곳에 가볼까?

Minho and Pyöngsu decide to try out the department store instead.

점원 B 어서 오세요. 뭘 찾으세요?  
 민호 좀 활동적인 옷을 찾는데요, 좀 밝은 색으로요.  
 청바지하고 같이 입을 수 있는 멋있고 질 좋은 옷이요.

점원 B 이거 어때요? 요즘 아주 유행하는 스타일이에요.  
 민호 재료가 뭐어요?

점원 B 백 퍼센트 면이에요. 한 번 입어보시겠어요?  
 민호 네, 감사합니다...  
 나한테 어울려요?

Minho Chö shyöch'u chom pwa-ra. Chongmal cho-t'a.  
 Pyöngsu Kúrae? Nae saenggag-enun dijain-i chom kushik kat-ta.  
 Minho Ani-ya. Nae maüm-e kkok turö.

Agassi, chö-shyöch'u ölma-eyo?

Chömwon A P'al ch'ön won-ieyo.

Minho Wa, chöngmal ssa-da.

Pyöngsu Ei, kurönde i-gö pwa. Chir-i pyöllo an choa.

Minho Kulsse, küröm tarün kos-e ka-bo-ikka?

Minho and Pyöngsu decide to try out the department store instead.

Chömwon B Ösö oseyo. Mwol ch'ajüseyo?

Minho Chom hwalttongjöng-in os-ul ch'an-nündeyo, chom palgün saeg-uro-yo.  
 Ch'öngbaji-hago kach'i ib-ul su in-nun möshit-kochil choun osh-iyö.

Chömwon B I-gö öttaeyo? Yojum aju yuhaeng ha-nün sut'ail-ieyo.  
 Pyöngsu Chaeryo-ga mwo-eyo?

Chömwon B Paek p'ösentu myön-ieyo. Hanbön ibö-boshigessöyo?  
 Minho Ne, komapsümnida...

Na-hant'e öullyöyo?

## Phrases and expressions

nae maüm-e kkok tŭrö (yo)	<i>I like it very much</i>
hanbön ibö-boshigessöyo?	<i>would you like to try it on?</i>
wa, chöngmal ssada	<i>wow, that's really cheap</i>
... -hant'e öullyöyo?	<i>does it suit ... ?</i>

For any verb endings that you do not recognize, read the grammar section after reading the dialogue.

shyöch'u 셔츠	<i>shirt</i>
dijain 디자인	<i>design</i>
kushik 구식	<i>old style, old fashioned</i>
kkok 꼭	<i>exactly, certainly, precisely</i>
wa! 와!	<i>wow!</i>
ei! 에이	<i>hey!</i>
chil 질	<i>quality</i>
pyölla 별로	<i>(not) particularly (see note 2)</i>
kos 곳	<i>place</i>
hwalttongjök 활동적	<i>casual, active</i>
hwalttongjög-in 활동적인	<i>(modifier form of the above, like an adjective)</i>
palgün 밝은	<i>bright</i>
ch'öngbaji 청바지	<i>blue jeans</i>
möshiss- 멋있-	<i>be stylish, be handsome</i>
yuhaeng ha- 유행하-	<i>be popular, be in vogue</i>
sut'ail 스타일	<i>style</i>
chaeryo 재료	<i>stuff, (raw) material (also ingredients)</i>
p'ösent'u 퍼센트	<i>per cent</i>
myön 면	<i>cotton</i>
öulli- 어울리-	<i>suit (a person)</i>

## Grammar

### 1 The plain style

The plain style is used between very close friends or when speaking to someone much younger than you. It can also be used when saying something to yourself out loud and it is used as a written form in notices and in books and newspapers.

Its form is very like that of the modifiers you met in Unit 9, but with some important differences. For processive verbs you add

-nün (after a consonant stem) or -n (after a vowel stem) onto the verb stem for the present tense, plus the verb ending -da. Hence: tun-nünda, kidari-nda, möng-nünda, ha-nda, mashi-nda etc. For the past tense you simply add -da onto the past stem of the verb: kidaryötta, mögötta, haetta, mashyotta.

For descriptive verbs, you add -da to the stem of the verb, either the past stem or the present stem according to whether you want a past or present meaning.

Here are some example sentences in the plain style.

Minho-ga shijang-e ka-nda	<i>Minho goes to the market</i>
Minho-ga shijang-e kat-ta	<i>Minho went to the market</i>
Minho-ga sagwa-rul möng-nünda	<i>Minho eats an apple</i>
Minho-ga sagwa-rul mög-otta	<i>Minho ate an apple</i>

Onül nalssi-ga cho-t'a	<i>Today, the weather is good</i>
Öje nalssi-ga choat-ta	<i>Yesterday, the weather was good</i>

In addition, there are two very common ways of asking questions in the plain style.

One of these you have learnt already: it is the question particle -na added to any verb stem (past, present, honorific) without the particle -yo on the end. Here are some examples: mwol möng-na? (*what are you eating?*), mwol ha-na? (*what are you doing?*).

Another common question pattern is to add -ni? to any verb stem: piga o-ni? ödi gan-ni? meaning *is it raining?* and *where did you go?* respectively.

Here are some examples of questions in the plain style:

Namdaemun shijang-i ödi-ni?	<i>Where is Namdaemun market?</i>
Onül ach'im musün yak-ul mögön-ni?	<i>What medicine did you take this morning?</i>

You can make commands in the plain style by adding -ra to the polite style of the present tense, minus the -yo. Thus, plain style commands would include: mögö-ra, hae-ra, ka-ji ma-ra *eat it!, do it!, don't go!* (from ha-ji maseyo)), and so on.

Plain style suggestions can be made by adding -ja to the present stem of any processive verb: mök-ja, ha-ja, iyagi ha-ja (*let's eat, let's do it, let's talk*) and so on.

## 2 The informal style

Korean also has another very important system of addressing those younger than you or very close to you, in addition to the plain style. In fact, it is perhaps even more common and it is very easy.

All you have to do is take the polite style of the verb (present, past or future) and take off the -yo particle! That's all there is to it:

Nae maũm-e kkok tũrõ	<i>I like it very much</i>
Kũrõnde igõ pwa	<i>But look at this</i>
Chil-i pyõllo an choa	<i>The quality is not very good</i>

The one exception is the copula: instead of taking the -ieyo form and taking off the -yo, the informal style of the copula is -ya after a vowel, and -iya after a consonant:

Chõ saram-un hanguk saram- <i>iya</i>	<i>That person is a Korean</i>
Kim sõnsaengnim-un ùysa- <i>ya</i>	<i>Mr Kim is a medical doctor</i>

## 3 Use of the particle -(ũ)ro

The particle -(ũ)ro has various functions, some of which you have learnt already. Here is a list of its different uses.

- instruments: *by, by means of*  
kich'a-ro wayo *come by train*  
son-ũro mandũrõyo *make by hand*
- cause, reason: *because of*  
Kyot'ong sago-ro *(He) died (because of*  
chugõssõyo *in) a traffic accident*  
Kaeinjõgin iyu-ro *(I) refused for a private*  
kõjõl haessõyo *reason*
- stuff, raw material: *from, of*  
I chib-un namu-ro *This house is made of*  
madũrõssõyo *wood*  
Wain-un p'odo-ro *Wine is made from*  
madũrõyo *grapes*
- unit, measure, degree: *by*  
Yõngug-esõ-nun p'aundu/ *They sell by the pound/kilo*  
k'iro-ro p'arayo *in Britain*
- direction: *towards*  
London-uro kassõyo *(He) went to London*  
Uri cib-uro oseyo *Please come to my house*

## 4 More on modifiers

In Unit 9 you learnt how to make modifiers with -nũn for processive verbs and -(ũ)n for descriptive verbs. You learned how they could be used with the noun ke (kõt) to mean *the act of (verb)ing*.

In fact, you can use modifiers in front of any noun and, as you would expect, their function is to modify the noun, to tell you something about the noun they modify. Here is a good example:

che-ga mǝng-nun sagwa

Here the noun is sagwa (*apple*), and chega mǝngnũn (from the verb mǝk-) is modifying the noun 'apple'. The meaning of the phrase is *the apple I am eating*. In English, we put the noun first, and afterwards the modifying phrase ((which) I am eating), but in Korean it is the other way round. The noun and its modifying phrase can then be used as part of a sentence, as you would any other noun. For example, you might want to say *the apple I am eating has gone bad* or *where is the apple I am eating?* You could do this in Korean like this (the modifying phrases are in brackets and you can see that they are optional; the sentences would make perfect sense without them, but the modifying phrases show which particular apple you are talking about):

(che-ga mǝng-nũn) sagwa-ga ssõgõssõyo  
(che-ga mǝng-nũn) sagwa-ga õdi issõyo?

## Do you think it suits me?

Minho tries the clothes on and they have another discussion.

민호	아, 아주 멋있는데요.
민수	(to Pyõngsu) 나한테 어울리니?
민호	음, 잘 어울려. 그런데 좀 작은 것 같다.
민수	좀 큰 걸 입어보실래요?
민호	네.
민수	여기 있어요.

A little while later.

민수	그게 더 잘 맞는다.
민호	아, 아주 근사해요.
민수	그런데 얼마지요?

- 점원** 삼만 이천 원이에요.  
**민호** 뭐라고요?  
**점원** 왜요? 싼 거예요. 겨우 삼만 이천 원인데요 뭐.  
**병수** 제가 생각해도 좀 비싼 것 같은데요.  
**민호** 남대문 시장에서는 비슷한 게 팔천 원이에요.  
**점원** 아, 네, 남대문하고는 비슷해 보여도 질이 달라요.  
 남대문 시장에서 옷을 사면 두 세 달 만에 못 쓰게  
 돼서 새 옷을 사야 되거든요.  
**병수** 그러면 이곳이 남대문 시장 옷보다 네 배나 더  
 오래가요?  
**점원** 적어도요. 그리고 훨씬 더 잘 맞아요.  
**민호** 음, 가서 생각 좀 다시 해봐야겠어요.

- Chōmwon** Ya, aju mōshin-nūndeyo.  
**Minho (to Pyōngsu)** Na-hant'e ōlli-ni?  
**Pyōngsu** Ūng, chal ōullyō. Kūrōnde chom chagūn kōt  
 kat-ta.  
**Chōmwon** Chom k'ūn gō-l ibō-boshi-llaeyo?  
**Minho** Ne.  
**Chōmwon** Yōgi issōyo.

A little while later.

- Pyōngsu** Kū-ge tō chal man-nūnda.  
**Chōmwon** Ya, aju kūnsa haeyo.  
**Minho** Kūrōnde, ōlma-jiyō?  
**Chōmwon** Samman ich'ōn won-ieyo.  
**Minho** Mworaguyo?  
**Chōmwon** Waeyo? Ssan kō-eyo. Kyōu samman-ich'ōn  
 won-indeyo mwo.  
**Pyōngsu** Che-ga saenggak hae-do, chom pissan kōt  
 kat'undeyo.  
**Minho** Namdaemun shijang-esō-nun pisut han ke  
 p'alch'ōn won-ieyo.  
**Chōmwon** A, ne, Namdaemun-hago-nun pisūt  
 hae-poyō-do chir-i tallayo.  
 Namdaemun shijang-esō os-ul sa-myōn tu  
 se tal man-e mot ssū-ge toe-sō sae os-ul  
 sa-ya toe-gōdunyo.  
**Pyōngsu** Kurōmyōn i-osh-i Namdaemun shijang  
 ot-poda ne-bae-na orae kayo?  
**Chōmwon** Chōgō-do-yo. Kūri-gō hwolsshin tō chal  
 majayo.  
**Minho** Um, ka-sō saenggak chom tashi hae-bwa-  
 yagessōyo.

## Phrases and expressions

che-ga saenggak hae-do	it seems to me
kyōu samman-ich'ōn	it's only 32,000 won (it's not much)
won-indeyo mwo	at least
chōgō-do-yo	I'll have to go away and think about it
ka-sō saenggak chom	
tashi hae-bwa-yagessōyo	

ūng 응	yes (casual form)
maj- 맞-	to fit well (maj + nunda = man-nunda)
kūnsa ha- 근사하-	look super, look good
kyōu 겨우	only
pisūt ha- 비슷하-	look similar
tarū- 다르-	be different (polite style: tallayo)
man-e 만에	within, in only (2 or 3 months)
ssū-ge 쓰게	usable
toe- 되-	become
bae 배	double, (two) times
orae 오래	long
ka- 가-	here: last, endure
hwolsshin 훨씬	by far, far and away

## Grammar

### 1 Ending sentences with mwo

Sometimes Koreans will add *mwo* to the end of certain sentences as a kind of afterthought. It has no real translation (despite literally meaning *what!*), and you don't need to use it yourself. It means something like *you know, isn't it* or *I think*, but you should not try to translate it or think that it has any great significance when you come across it.

### 2 Even if it looks the same

This dialogue has a rather complex verb in it which is a good example of how Korean uses particles and compounds verbs in quite complicated ways to build up important meanings. The form is *pisūt hae-poyō-do*. We will work through it slowly to see how it is formed.

The basic verb is *pisūt ha-* which means *is similar*. To this the verb *poi-* (*to look like, to appear*) has been added to give the

meaning to look similar, to appear similar. You have seen verbs compounded before with the verbs chu- and po- and you remember that these verbs are added on to the polite style of the main verb, with the -yo particle taken off (for example, mögö-bo-seyo, *please try eating it*). This example is just the same; the polite style of *is similar* is taken (pisüt haeyo), the yo is removed (pisüt hae-) and the next verb poi- is added (pisut haepoi-).

You have also learnt the form -(ö)do before, which means *even though*, and once again this is added to the polite style of the verb, minus the yo.

This means that the meaning of the entire verb set pisuthae poyodo is *even though it looks similar, even though it appears similar*.

### 3 Use of the verb toe-

The verb toe- means *is okay, (it) will do*, and it can be used after verbs with the particle -do (*even though*), to mean *it's okay if*. . . Here are two examples:

naga-do toeyo      *it's okay to go out (lit.: even if/even though you go out, it's okay/it will do)*  
mögö-do toeyo?    *is it okay to eat this? (lit.: even if/though I eat this, is it okay?)*

This is a very useful pattern and is often used by Koreans to ask for and to give permission.

Another meaning of the verb toe- is *becomes*. You saw it in the dialogue with the word mot ssu-ge (*unusable*), meaning *it becomes unusable*. You can add the ending -ge onto other verb stems, and follow it with toe- to say that something becomes or comes to a particular state. Here are some other examples:

Mon mök-ke toeössöyo      *It has become inedible (it's gone off!)*  
Hanguk yöja-hago kyörhon    *I came to marry a Korean girl*  
ha-ge toeössöyo

### 4 Speech styles and honorifics

We are taking this opportunity to remind you about the essential difference between speech styles and honorifics in Korean. It is absolutely essential that you are clear about the distinction, which is why we are going over it again and giving you a few more examples.

Remember, speech styles are decided according to the person you are talking to. Mostly you will use the polite style, but in formal situations you might use the formal style (which you will learn later), and to close friends and young people or children you might use the informal style or the plain style.

The person you are talking *about*, however, will govern whether or not you use an honorific. There is thus no incompatibility between honorifics and informal speech styles. Imagine you are talking to a child and asking the child where his granddad has gone. You would use the informal or plain style (because you are talking to a child) and you would use an honorific (because you are talking about granddad, who is an older, esteemed person).

When you are addressing someone as 'you' and talking about them, things will be much more straightforward. If you are asking a child what he is doing, you would use an informal style and, of course, no honorific since the person you are talking about (the child) is not an honorific person. In contrast, if you are talking to a professor and asking him what he is doing, you might use the polite or even the formal style and you would certainly use an honorific.

Here are a couple of examples of different combinations of speech styles and honorifics. Make sure you understand in each case the social level of the person being addressed and the social level of the person being spoken about:

Minho, haraböji mwo	<i>Minho, what does your granddad do?</i>
ha-shi-ni?	
Minho, nö mwo ha-ni?	<i>Minho, what do you do?</i>
Sönsaengnim, haraböji mwo	<i>Professor, what does your granddad do?</i>
ha-se-yo?	
Sönsaengnim, Minho mwo	<i>Professor, what does Minho do?</i>
hae-yo?	

### 5 Do you want to/do you feel like?

The pattern -(u)llaeyo can be added to the stems of processive verb bases (present tense) to ask in a casual way if someone wants to do or feels like doing something. You met it in the phrase han-bön ibö-boshi-llaeyo, where it is added to the honorific form of ibö-po- (*to try on*) to give the meaning *would you like to try it on?* Other examples would be:

Köp'i mashi-llaeyo?	<i>Do you want to drink coffee, do you fancy some coffee?</i>
Noraebang-e ka-llaeyo?	<i>How about going to a noraebang?</i>

## Practice

- Put the following sentences into the plain style.
  - 이 옷이 정말 좋아요!
  - 비가 와요.
  - 뭘 하세요?
  - 밥을 먹고 있어요.
  - 걱정하고 있어요?
  - 조금 더 기다리면 버스가 올 거예요.
  - 밥 먹어요.
  - 어제 밤 어디 갔어요?
  - 조심했어요?
- Translate the following phrases into Korean using the modifier forms you have learnt in this lesson.
  - clothes made of cotton
  - the beer we drank yesterday
  - the book Mr Kim is reading
  - the shirt he is wearing
  - the film we saw last year
  - the food I hate
- Join the following two sets of information with -*ǒ/a-do* to give the meaning 'even if A, then B' (or, 'even though A, B'). For example, the first will be: *Even if it looks good, it isn't.*

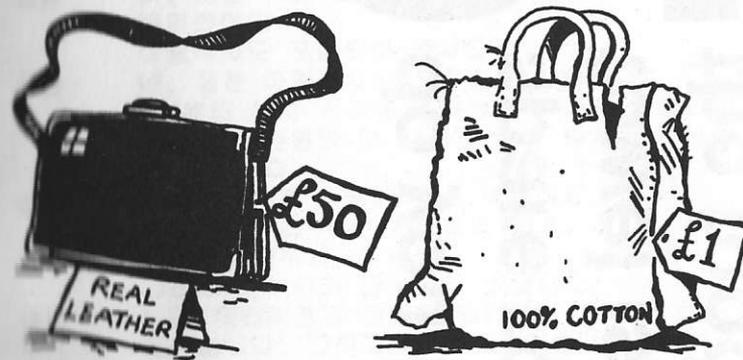
a	It looks good	it isn't
b	It's expensive	it'll be tasty
c	It's raining	I want to go out
d	I don't like him	I'll have to meet him
e	It's a bright colour	it doesn't suit you
f	I've got a headache	thinking of going to a <i>noraebang</i>
- Make up a dialogue between two people arguing about which film to see on TV tonight. One of them wants to see a film which the other one says they saw last year. He wants to see a different film, but the other thinks it's on too late and that it's boring anyway. To help you, here are three phrases that you might like to use:
 

Kŭ-gŏs-un uri-ga changnyŏn-e pon yŏnghwa-janayo!  
Yŏldu shi-ga nŏmu nŭjŏssŏyo? Musŭn mar-ieyo?!  
Chŏngmal chaemi ŏmnun kŏt kar'ayo.

Now say the dialogue aloud using the informal style for all the verb endings and taking out any honorific suffixes you might have used.

- Translate the following sentences into Korean.

- That person who speaks Korean well is coming.
  - I don't like those clothes you bought yesterday.
  - He's a stylish man.
  - Even though the quality is better, it's four times as expensive.
  - Can I try on those clothes you are wearing?
  - What did you say?
  - Please take care when you are driving at night, even though you haven't been drinking.
  - Do you have anything similar?
- You are looking for a new bag and come across the following pair. Compare one with the other (price, quality, size, colour) and say which one you would like to buy.



# 12

do you have a spare room?  
the towel is dirty and  
the food is cold

**In this unit you will learn**

- about booking hotels and inquiring about vacancies and facilities
- about making complaints when things don't go quite as they should
- more about the formal style of speech and the future tense
- quoted speech and reporting what other people said

## ▶ Do you have a spare room?

Mr Lee is looking for a couple of rooms in a hotel.

- 손님: 빈 방 있어요?  
주인: 네 있어요. 침대방을 드릴까요, 온돌방을 드릴까요?  
손님: 침대방 하나하고 온돌방 하나 주세요.  
주인: 네 알겠습니다. 침대방은 하루에 오만원이고 온돌방은 하루에 사만원입니다. 얼마동안 묵으시겠습니까?  
손님: 우선 삼일 동안요. 그리고 좀 더 묵을지도 몰라요.  
주인: 오일 이상 예약하시면 5% 할인해 드리는데요.  
손님: 아, 그럼 우리 집사람하고 좀 의논해 봐야겠어요.  
주인: 아침식사도 포함되어 있지요?  
손님: 네, 물론 아침식사도 포함되어 있습니다. 7시부터 10시 사이에 지하식당에 가시면 됩니다. 그리고 이천원만 더 내시면 손님 방까지 배달도 해 드립니다.  
손님: 아니오, 직접 식당에 가서 먹겠어요.  
주인: 이 호텔에 또 무슨 시설들이 있습니까?  
손님: 수영장, 사우나, 오락실, 노래방, 스텐드바, 방에 텔레비전과 전화도 있습니까?  
주인: 물론입니다. 그리고 미니바도 있습니다.  
손님: 오, 아주 훌륭하군요. 오일 동안 예약하는 게 좋을 것 같아요.  
주인: 아마 우리 집사람도 좋아할 거예요.
- Bonnim: Pin pang issöyo?  
Chuin: Ne, issöyo. Ch'imdaebang-ul türilkkayo, ondolpang-ul türilkkayo?  
Bonnim: Ch'imdaebang hana-hago ondolpang hana chuseyo.  
Chuin: Ne, algessümnida. Ch'imdaebang-un haru-e oman won-i-go ondolpang-un haru-e saman won-i-mnida. Ölma-dongan mugushigessumnikka?  
Bonnim: Usön sam-il-dongan-yo. Kurigo chom tö mug-uljido mollayo.  
Chuin: O-il-isang yeyak ha-shimyön o-p'ösent'u harin hae-türinüdeyo.

- Sonnim** A, kŭrŏm uri chipsaram-hago chom ūynon hae-bwayagessŏyo.  
Ach'im shiksa-do p'oham toeŏ-itjiyo?
- Chuin** Ne, mullon ach'im shiksa-do p'oham toeŏ-issumnida.  
Ilgop-shi-but'ŏ yŏl-shi-sai-e chiha shiktang-e ka-shimyŏn toemnida.  
Kŭrigo ich'ŏn won-man tŏ nae-shimyŏn sonnim pang-kkaji paedal-do hae-durimnida.
- Sonnim** Aniyŏ, chickchŏp shiktang-e ka-sŏ mŏkkessŏyo.  
I-hot'er-e tto musun shisŏl-dur-i issŭmnikka?
- Chuin** Suyŏngjang, sauna, orakshil, noraebang, sut'enduba, kurigo hanshiktang-gwa yangshiktang-i issumnida.
- Sonnim** Pang-e t'ellebijyŏn-gwa chŏnhwa-do innayo?
- Chuin** Mullon-imnida. Kŭrigo miniba-do issŭmnida.
- Sonnim** O, aju hullyung ha-gunyo! O-il-dongan yeyak hanun ke cho-ul kŏt kat'ayo. Ama uri chipsaram-do choa ha-ikŏeyo.

## Phrases and expressions

ŏlma-dongan mug-ŭshigessŏyo?	<i>how long will you be staying for?</i>
chom tŏ muk-ŭljido mollayo	<i>we may stay longer (I don't know if we might . . .)</i>
chipsaram-hago chom ūynon hae-bwayagessŏyo	<i>I'll have to discuss it with my wife</i>
chikchŏp shiktang-e ka-sŏ mŏkkessŏyo	<i>we'll go to the restaurant to eat</i>
o-il-dongan yeyak hanun ke cho-ŭl kŏt kat'ayo	<i>it seems like it would be a good idea to book for five nights</i>

pin 빈	<i>empty, vacant, free (of seats and rooms)</i>
pang 방	<i>room</i>
ch'imdaebang 침대방	<i>room with bed</i>
ch'imdae 침대	<i>bed</i>
ondolbang 온돌방	<i>room with bed on floor</i>
haru-e 하루에	<i>per day</i>
haru 하루	<i>one day (duration)</i>
ŏlma-dongan 얼마동안	<i>how long</i>
-dongan -동안	<i>during</i>
muk- 묵-	<i>stay, lodge, spend the night</i>
isang 이상	<i>more than</i>

yeyak ha- 예약하-	<i>reserve, book</i>
harin ha- 할인하-	<i>give a discount</i>
harin 할인	<i>discount</i>
ūynon ha- 의논하-	<i>discuss</i>
ūynon 의논	<i>discussion</i>
ach'imshiksa 아침식사	<i>breakfast</i>
ach'im 아침	<i>morning; breakfast (abbreviated form)</i>
ach'im ha- 아침하-	<i>have breakfast</i>
p'oham doeŏ-iss- 포함되어 있-	<i>be included</i>
sai-e 사이에	<i>between</i>
chiha shiktang 지하 식당	<i>basement restaurant</i>
chiha 지하	<i>basement</i>
paedal ha- 배달하-	<i>deliver</i>
chikchŏp 직접	<i>direct(ly)</i>
shisŏl 시설	<i>facility</i>
suyŏngjang 수영장	<i>swimming pool</i>
suyŏng ha- 수영하-	<i>swim</i>
sauna 사우나	<i>sauna</i>
orakshil 오락실	<i>amusements (electronic games, etc.)</i>
sut'enduba 스텐드바	<i>bar (standing bar)</i>
hanshiktang 한식당	<i>Korean restaurant (serving Korean food)</i>
yangshiktang 양식당	<i>western restaurant</i>
miniba 미니바	<i>mini-bar</i>
hullyung ha- 훌륭하-	<i>is excellent, great</i>

## Grammar

### 1 The formal style

The formal style is the last important speech style for you to learn. It is used in formal situations, often by officials or representatives (such as the hotel worker in the dialogue), but it can be used by anybody when some formality is called for. It is perhaps slightly more common among men than women and, if you are a man, it is a good idea to say some sentences in the formal style occasionally, as if you always use the polite style it can sound to Koreans as though your Korean is a bit effeminate. It is quite common to mix formal and polite speech styles in this way, with some sentences in the formal style and some in the polite style.

To make statements in the formal style (that is, normal sentences which state facts, not questions, commands or suggestions), you add the ending *-(sũ)mnida* to the stem of the verb (either the present stem, past stem, or honorific present or past stem). Note that the ending is spelt *-(sũ)pnida*, but pronounced *-(sũ)mnida*. To consonant stems you add the form *-sũmnida*, and to vowel stems *-mnida*:

	<i>wear</i>	<i>buy</i>
<i>stem</i>	ip-	sa-
	ipsũmnida	samnida
<i>past</i>	iböss-	sass-
	ibössũmnida	sassũmnida
<i>honorific</i>	ibũshi-	sashi-
	ibũshimnida	sashimnida
<i>hon past</i>	ibũshyöss-	sashyöss-
	ibũshyössũmnida	sashyössũmnida

Note that the past formal forms have a treble *-s*, and so are spelt for example, *sass-sũmnida*. We just write two *ss* in romanization, however. You will recognize these formal statements from expressions like *mian hamnida*, *choesong hamnida* and *algessũmnida*. All those expressions are almost always used in the formal style.

To make questions in the formal style, you add the ending *-(sũ)mnikka?* as follows:

	<i>wear</i>	<i>buy</i>
<i>stem</i>	ip-	sa-
	ipsũmnikka?	samnikka?
<i>past</i>	iböss-	sass-
	ibössũmnikka?	sassũmnikka?
<i>honorific</i>	ibũshi-	sashi-
	ibũshimnikka?	sashimnikka?
<i>hon past</i>	ibũshyöss-	sashyöss-
	ibũshyössũmnikka?	sashyössũmnikka?

Commands in the formal style always go on honorific present stems, and the ending is *-pshio* (pronounced rather as if it were *-pshiyō*):

<i>stem</i>	ip	sa-
<i>honorific stem</i>	ibũshi-	sashi-
<i>formal command</i>	ibũshipshio	sashipshio

You have already learnt how to make suggestions in the formal style, way back in the early lessons of the course: *-(ũ)pshida*. Note that this form is never added to an honorific stem, as suggestions (e.g. *shall we . . .*) always include yourself, and Korean never allows you to refer to yourself in honorific terms.

## 2 The future marker *-kess*

The future marker *-kess* can be added to any present stem (normal or honorific) to make a future stem. You can then add verb endings to this (such as the polite or formal styles, or a clause ending such as *-jiman*) in the normal way. You have two good examples in this unit:

<i>Ōlma-dongan mugũshi-gess-ōyo?</i>	<i>How long will you be staying for?</i>
<i>Chipsaram-hago ŷnyon</i>	<i>I will have to discuss</i>
<i>hae-bwaya-gess-ōyo</i>	<i>with my wife . . .</i>

The *-kess* future marker is used in the ending *-yagessōyo* (as in the second example) which you have already learnt. It is also used in certain idiomatic phrases like *algessũmnida* and *morugessũmnida* (*I understand* and *I don't understand*).

Although this form does express the future (it can also be used to express probability), the most common way to put a normal sentence into the future is with the *-(ũ)lkōeyo* form which you have already learnt. *-(ũ)lkōeyo* is a more useful form than *-kess* for most situations, and the precise difference between them is something that you do not really need to worry about for this course. It is sufficient to be able to recognize the *-kess* as the future marker, and to know that it can be used to make future stems which can then be used in other constructions.

## 3 I don't know whether

You can say that you don't know whether you will do something or other by adding *-(u)lji-do moru-* to a verb stem. The example from the dialogue was *chom tō mwug-ulji-do mollayo* (*I don't know whether we will stay a bit longer, it might be that we stay a bit longer*). Here are a couple of other examples:

<i>chorōp ha-lji-do mollayo</i>	<i>I don't know whether I'll graduate (or not)</i>
<i>ka-l su iss-ũlji-do morũmnida</i>	<i>I don't even know if I'll be able to go or not</i>

#### 4 If you do, it will be OK

The sentence *ka-shimyŏn toemnidā* means *if you go, it will be OK*, and this pattern, one clause ending in *-myŏn*, plus a form of the verb *toe-* is a common pattern. In the context of the dialogue it is used to say that breakfast is available between certain times, so that if they go to the restaurant between those times, *it will be OK*. It can be used to ask for permission to do something: *chigŭm ka-myŏn toeyo?* (*is it okay to go now?*).

A very similar pattern is used in the next dialogue, where there is a similar sentence to this: *chŏ-hant'e mal ha-myŏn an toeyo?* (*can't you tell me? if you tell me, won't it be okay?*). A similar use would be *pakk-e naga-myŏn an toemnikka?* (*can't I go outside? won't it be OK if I go outside?*).

The next dialogue is quite advanced in parts and you should be satisfied if you understand the gist of what is going on. If you can understand the details of the dialogue then you can be sure that your Korean is coming on very well indeed.

### ▶ The towel is dirty and the food is cold

Unfortunately, the hotel didn't turn out to be as good as it looked . . .

- 손님 지배인 좀 바꿔 주세요.  
 종업원 실례지만, 무슨 일이세요?  
 손님 이 호텔 서비스에 대해서 할 말이 있어요.  
 종업원 죄송하지만 저한테 말씀하시면 안될까요?  
 손님 지배인한테 직접 말하고 싶은데요.  
 종업원 좋습니다. 잠깐 기다리세요.

*A little while later.*

- 지배인 네, 지배인입니다. 말씀하시지요.  
 손님 이 호텔 서비스에 문제가 많은 것 같아요.  
 직원들이 불친절하고 무뎌요.  
 그리고 오늘 아침에 식당에 갔는데 음식이 다  
 식어 있었어요.  
 어제도 마찬가지였고요.  
 지배인 그래요? 정말 죄송합니다.  
 웨이터한테 말씀하셨습니까?

- 손님 물론 종업원 아가씨한테 얘기했지요.  
 그런데 아가씨가 불친절한데다가 제 한국말을 못  
 알아듣겠다고 하면서 음식에 아무 문제가 없다고  
 했어요.  
 음식이 다 식었고 맛이 없는데도 말이에요.  
 지배인 아, 정말 죄송합니다.  
 항상 최선의 봉사를 하려고 노력하는데도 가끔  
 실수가 발생합니다.  
 제가 즉시 식당 종업원들에게 얘기하겠습니다.  
 손님 그리고 또 있어요.  
 오늘 아침 수건을 갈아달라고 했는데  
 수건이 너무 더러웠어요.  
 그리고 내 아들 방은 아직까지 청소도 안 했어요.  
 지배인 그것 참 이상하군요.  
 손님 손님처럼 불평하는 경우가 지금까지 없었는데요.  
 손님 그것 뿐이 아니에요. 내 방의 텔레비전은 고장이  
 났고, 냉장고 문은 열리지도 않아요.  
 솔직히 말해서 이 호텔 서비스하고 시설은 엉망이  
 네요.  
 지배인 죄송합니다. 그렇지만 저희도 손님처럼 불평 많은  
 사람은 필요없으니까 오늘 당장 나가 주세요.  
 요금은 다시 환불해 드리겠습니다.

- Bonnim Chibaein chom pakkwo-juseyo.  
 Chongŏpwon Shillye-jiman, musŭn ir-iseyo?  
 Bonnim I-hot'el sŏbisu-e taehaesŏ ha-l mar-i issŏyo.  
 Chongŏpwon Choesong ha-jiman chŏ-hant'e malssum ha-  
 shimyŏn an toe-ikkayo?  
 Bonnim Chibaein-hant'e chikchŏp mal ha-go ship'undeyo.  
 Chongŏpwon Chosŭmnida. Chamkkan kidariseyo.

*A little while later.*

- Chibaein Ne, chibaein-umnida. Malssŭm hashijiyo.  
 Bonnim I-hot'el sŏbisu-e munje-ga man-un kŏt kat'ayo.  
 Chigwon-dur-i pulch'inchŏl ha-go muttuktuk  
 haeyo. Kurigo onŭl ach'im-e shiktang-e kannunde  
 umshig-i ta shigŏ-issŏssŏyo. Ŏje-do mach'  
 angaji-yŏt-goyo.  
 Chibaein Kŭraeyo? Chŏngmal choesong hamnida.  
 Weit'ŏ-hant'e malssum hashyŏssumnikka?  
 Bonnim Mullon chongŏpwon agasshi-hant'e yaegi haetjiyo.  
 Kurŏnde agasshi-ga pulch'inchŏlha-ndedaga che  
 hangung mar-ul mot aradut-ket-tago ha-myŏnsŏ  
 ūmshig-e amu munje-ga ŏp-tago haessŏyo.  
 Ūmshig-i ta shig-ŏt-ko mash-i ŏmnunde-do mar-ieyo.

- Chibaein** A, chǒngmal choesong hamnida.  
Hangsang ch'oesǒn-uy pongsa-rul ha-ryōgo  
noryōk hanunde-do kakkum shilsu-ga palsaeng  
hamnida.  
Chega chūkshi shiktang chongōpwon-dul-ege  
yaegi ha-gessumnida.
- Sonnim** Kūri-go tto issōyo. Onūl ach'im sugōn-ul kara-  
dallago haennunde sugōn-i nōmu tōrōwossōyo.  
Kūri-go nae adūl pang-un ajik-kkaji ch'ōngso-do  
an haessōyo.
- Chibaein** Kū-gōt ch'am isang ha-gunyo.  
Sonnim ch'ōrōm pulp'yōng hanun kyōngu-ga  
chigūm-kkaji ōpsōnnundeyo.
- Sonnim** Kū-gōt-ppun-i anieyo. Nae pang-uy t'ellobiyōn-un  
kojang nat-ko naengjanggo mun-un yōlli-ji-do  
anayo. Soljikhi mal hae-sō i-hot'el sōbisu-hago  
shisōr-un ōngmang-i-neyo.
- Chibaein** Choesong hamnida. Kurōch'iman chōhuy-do  
sonnim-ch'ōrōm pulp'yōng manūn saram-un  
p'iryō ōps-unikka onūl tangjang naga-juseyo.  
Yogūm-un tashi hwanpul hae-dūrigessumnida.

## Phrases and expressions

- ... -e taehaesō ha-l mar-i  
issōyo *I have something to say  
about ...  
there's something I want to  
say about ...*
- chō-hant'e malssūm  
ha-shimyōn an toelkkayo? *wouldn't it be all right to  
tell me?*
- ōje-do mach'angaji-yōtgoyo *can't you just tell me?  
it was exactly the same  
yesterday as well*
- mot ara-dūt-ket-tago ha- *say that (one) couldn't  
understand*
- amu munje ōp-tago  
haessōyo *(she) said that there  
wasn't any problem*
- mashi-ōmnūnde-do mar-ieyo *I'm saying (emphasis!) that the  
food even tasted bad*
- sugōn-ul kara-tallago  
haessōyo *I asked (her) to change  
the towel*
- solchikhi mal hae-sō *honestly speaking; to tell the  
truth; in fact ...*

- chibaein 지배인** *manager (of hotel or facility)*  
**sōbisu 서비스** *service*  
**(noun)-e taehaesō -에 대해서** *concerning (noun), about  
(noun)*
- ha-l mal 할 말** *something to say*  
**malssūm ha- 말씀하-** *say (of someone  
honorific, often in phrase  
malssum haseyo!)*
- malssūm haseyo 말씀하세요** *please tell me, please say it  
(honorific)*
- e -에** *about, concerning*  
**munje 문제** *problem*  
**chigwon 직원** *employee*  
**pulch'inchōl ha- 불친절하-** *be unhelpful, be unkind, be  
impolite*
- muttuktuk ha- 무뚝뚝하-** *be stubborn, be blunt*  
**shigō-iss- 식어 있-** *be bad, have gone off, cold,  
be stale etc.*
- mach'angaji-ieyo 마찬가지로** *be the same, be identical*  
**wait'ō 웨이터** *waiter*  
**yaegi ha- 얘기하-** *talk, tell*  
**-(n)(u)ndedaga -는데다가** *on top of (clause ending,  
onto verbs, like the -nunde  
pattern)*
- ara-dūl- 알아들-** *understand (1/t verb like  
tul-, listen; ara-durōyo,  
ara-dut-ko etc.)*
- ... tago ha- -다고 하-
- myōnsō -면서** *saying (this pattern shows  
quoted speech; see note 4)*  
**shik- 식-** *while (see note 5)*  
**mash-i ōps- 맛이 없-** *get cold*  
**noryōk ha- 노력하-** *be tasteless, be unpleasant  
(to eat)*  
**shilsu 실수** *make effort, strive*  
**palsaeng ha- 발생하-** *mistake*  
**chūkshi 즉시** *make a mistake*  
**sugōn 수건** *occur, happen*  
**kal- 갈-** *immediately*  
**kara-ip- 갈아입-** *towel*  
**kara-t'a- 갈아타-** *change (a towel, a platform,  
clothes etc.)*  
*change clothes*  
*change (platform, trains etc.)*

töröp- 더럽-	be dirty (polite: tōrōwōyo, p-verb like kakkap- etc.)
ajik 아직	yet, still
ch'ōngso ha- 청소하-	clean, clean up
ch'am 참-	very
-ch'ōrōm -처럼	like
pulp'yōng ha- 불평하-	complain
kyōngu 경우	circumstance, situation (here: occurrence)
-ppun -뿐	only
kojang na- 고장나-	break down
kojang nassōyo 고장났어요	be broken down
naengjanggo 냉장고	refrigerator
mun 문	door
yolli-ji an(h)- 열리지 않-	does not open
ōngmang 엉망	rubbish, awful, appalling
tangjang 당장	immediately
yogūm 요금	fee
hwanpul ha- 환불하-	reimburse

## Grammar

### 1 Concerning

You can say what you are talking, discussing, writing or reading about in Korean with the construction -e taehaesō which is added to the noun which describes what it is you are talking about. Here are some examples:

chōngch'i-e taehaesō iyagi haessōyo	(we) talked about politics
sōbisu-e taehaesō pulp'yōng	(he) complained about the service
haessōyo	
nalssi-e taehaesō murō-bwassōyo	(he) asked about the weather

### 2 The future modifier

We have already taught you a bit about the future modifier -(u)l and here is the opportunity to give you a few more examples, the first one taken from the dialogue. You will remember that modifiers are added to verbs which then modify or describe the noun which they precede. We've put the modifier phrase in

brackets to help you spot the pattern, and likewise its literal meaning on the right-hand side:

sōbisu-e taehaesō (ha-l mar-i) issōyo	(words to say) I've got some things to say about the service
(ka-l shigan-i) toess ōyo?	(time to go) is it time to go? (lit. has it become time to go?)
chib-e (mōg-ul kōsh-i) issōyo?	(thing to eat) is there anything to eat at home?

### 3 On top of that

You have learnt the word kedaga which means *on top of that* and you can use a similar form to add to verbs. You use the -(ō)nde or -nūnde imminent elaboration form plus -dedaga, so that the completed forms look like cho-ūndedaga (*on top of being good*); ka-nūndedaga (*on top of going*) and so on. Here are two examples in sentences:

Losh-i chir-i cho-ūndedaga ssayo  
These clothes are good quality and, on top of that, they're cheap

Pi-ga o-nūndedaga ch'uwoyo  
It's raining and on top of that it's cold

### 4 Quotations and reported speech

This unit introduces you to the rather complicated matter of reported speech in Korean. Reported speech is when you say what someone else said to you, for example, 'He said he was going to the shops.' What the person said literally, of course, was 'I'm going to the shops', but when we report what he said we change things to something like, 'He said *he was going* to the shops.' This section is designed so that you will be able to recognize reported speech in Korean and use some of the forms yourself. It is not designed to teach reported speech comprehensively. If you wish to know more, you should consult an advanced grammar book. What we tell you here is more than you need to get by.

To report speech in Korean you use the plain style of the verb (mōng-nunda, sanda, kanda, chot'a etc.), plus ko ha-. Remember that the plain style can be formed on any verb stem, past present or future, and honorifics. Here are three examples: the first sentence gives you what the person actually said, the second one gives the reported speech form, 'he said' or 'he says':

na-nun chib-e kayo  
chib-e kanda-go haeyo  
(plain style of ka- = kanda)

saram-dür-i mansümnida  
saram-dür-i mant'a-go haessöyo  
(plain style of man(h)- = mant'a)  
nalsshi-ga choassöyo

Kim sönsaengnim-i nalssi-ga  
choat-tago haessöyo  
(plain style past of cho- = choat-ta (from choass-))

*I'm going going home  
he says he's going home*

*there are a lot of people  
he said there were a lot of  
people  
the weather was good  
(Mr Kim speaking)  
Mr Kim said that the  
weather was good*

Note that suggestions and commands can be quoted in the same way:

chib-e kapshida *let's go home*  
chib-e kaja-go haessöyo *he suggested we go home*  
(kaja = plain style suggestion of ka-)

pap mögöra *eat your food!*  
pap mög-urago haessöyo *he told (him/me) to eat his/my food*

Questions are a little more complicated and you only need to be able to recognize them as having -nya- or -nunya- in them: you will then know what they are when someone uses the form.

## 5 While

You can say that you are doing something while you are doing something else by adding -(ü)myönsö to the 'while' clause. For example, to say that you were talking (while you watched TV), you would say: t'ellebijyön-ul po-myönsö iyagi haessöyo. Here are a couple of other examples.

Hangung mal paeu-myönsö ümag-ul turöyo  
*I listen to music while I study Korean*

Mög-ümyönsö mal hae-boseyo  
*Please tell me while you're eating*

## 6 Even though: -nunde-do

You have learnt the imminent elaboration form -nunde which indicates that you have not finished what you are saying yet and that there is more to come. You have also learned -do, added to the polite style minus -yo to mean *even though*. The combined do form -nundedo also means *even though (so and so)*, but has

a stronger emphasis than simply -do. Thus, noryök ha-nunde-do kakküm shilsu-ga palsaeng hamnida (from the dialogue) means *even though we (really) are trying, occasionally mistakes happen*.

The other -nündaedo form from the dialogue is a way of putting special emphasis on what you have just said. You saw it in the phrase ümshig-i ta shig-öt-go mash-i ömnünde-do marieyo. The waiter had just told Mr Lee that there was no problem with the food, and then Mr Lee adds: *even though (despite the fact that) the food was off and was tasteless*. The mar-ieyo bit on the end means something like *that's what I'm saying* and adds strong emphasis to what has just been said.

## 7 Quoted requests

Back to reported speech again. When you ask something to be done for your benefit (by using a compound verb with chu-, as in hac-juseyo, *please do it for me*) and then report what you have just said, as in *I asked him to (do it for me)*, there is a special rule to remember. Instead of saying something like (hae-ju-rago) haessöyo, you swop the verb chu- and the -ra- which follows it with the verb talla, to give hac-dallago haessöyo (*I asked him to do it for me*).

You saw this in the phrase sugön-ul karadallago haennunde . . . (*I asked her to change the towels for me . . .*). Do not worry about this pattern; this note is merely to explain what is going on in the dialogue and to enable you to recognize the form.

## Practice

- 1 You are thinking of sending your children to a new school in Korea and you have a meeting with one of the teachers to chat about the school. Before you go, you jot down some questions you want to ask about the school. Can you put them into Korean in full sentences?
  - a How many students? (haksaeng: student)
  - b What facilities?
  - c Is it possible to study Korean and Chinese?
  - d How many students studying Korean? (how many: myön-myöng)
  - e What time is lunch?
  - f Is it okay to go home to eat at lunchtime?

- 2 You go to make a booking at a hotel with the following requirements. The receptionist asks you the following questions, for which you must prepare answers in Korean.



- a Mwol towa-durilkkayo?  
b Ch'imdaebang durilkkayo?  
c Ai-dur-i myö-sar-ieyo? (ai: *child*)  
d Öлма dongan mug-ushigessöyo?  
e Ach'im shiksa paedal hae-durilkkayo?
- 3 Put the following sentences into the formal style.
- a Muös-ul hashyössöyo?  
b Ch'imdaebang hana chuseyo.  
c Chö-saram-un Kim sönsaengnim-iseyo?  
d Na-nun paekhwajöm-e kanda.  
e Radio-rul tür-ümyönsö ch'aeg-ul ilgöyo.
- 4 Translate the following sentences into English.
- a 일주일 이상 예약하시면 10% 할인해 드립니다.  
b 솔직히 말해서 그런 사람을 싫어해요.  
c 아침 벌써 먹었다고 했어요.  
d 온돌방은 하루에 이만원이예요.  
e 일곱시에 일어나시면 됩니다.  
f 요즘은 다시 환불해 드릴 수 없습니다.  
g 침대방 두 개 주세요.  
h 이 호텔에 대해서 할 말이 있으시면 지배인한테 말해 주세요.

- 5 Ask if there are the following facilities at the hotel at which you are staying.



- 6 Translate the following into Korean.
- a How long are you booking for?  
b I told the bank clerk immediately.  
c What facilities are there at the hotel?  
d There seem to be a lot of problems with my car.  
e My son still hasn't got up.  
f We'll go straight to the bar and have a drink.  
g Mr Kim is an impolite person.  
h It would be a good idea to stay for three nights.
- 7 Your hotel room has a few problems, as you can see in the picture. Write out a series of complaints, making your language as strong as you can.



# 13

## two to Taegu/ I don't want to go there!

In this unit you will learn

- how to buy train tickets
- how to ask for information about catching the train you want
- how to discuss going out for meals and drinks together

## Two to Taegu

- 박선영: 뭘 도와 드릴까요?  
 박선영: 오늘 저녁 대구 가는 기차가 있나요?  
 배효원: 네, 두 가지가 있는데요, 완행은 5시 30분이고 직행은 7시 45분이에요.  
 박선영: 시간은 얼마나 걸려요?  
 배효원: 직행은 3시간 걸리고, 완행은 4시간 30분 걸립니다.  
 박선영: 가격은요?  
 배효원: 완행은 팔천원이고, 직행은 만오천원입니다. 직행은 좌석이 얼마 남지 않았습니니다.  
 박선영: 네 자리를 함께 예약할 수 있을까요?  
 배효원: 잠깐만 기다려 보세요. 확인 좀 해 보겠습니다.  
 박선영: 아, 네. 네 자리가 있군요!  
 배효원: 흡연석을 원하세요, 금연석을 원하세요?  
 박선영: 금연석으로 부탁드립니다.  
 배효원: 편도를 드릴까요, 왕복을 드릴까요?  
 박선영: 왕복으로 주세요.  
 배효원: 언제 돌아오시겠어요?  
 박선영: 일요일 저녁에요.  
 배효원: 6시 30분 기차가 있는데, 완행이에요.  
 박선영: 일요일 저녁에는 직행 기차는 없는데요.  
 배효원: 그러면 일요일 오후에는요?  
 박선영: 2시 30분에 직행 기차가 있어요.  
 배효원: 그거 좋군요. 그걸로 주세요.  
 박선영: 모두 십이만원입니다.  
 배효원: 몇 번 흡에서 기차가 떠나지요?  
 박선영: 아직 모릅니다. 출발 시간 전에 전광판을 봐주세요.  
 박선영: 네, 알겠어요. 감사합니다.

- Maep'yowon: Mwol towa-dürilkkayo?  
 Mr Pak: Onül chönyöök Taegu kanün kich'a-ga innayo?  
 Maep'yowon: Ne. Tu-kaji-ga innündeyo. Wanhaeng-un tasö-shi samship-pun-igo chikhaeng-un ilgop-shi sashipo-pun-ieyo.  
 Mr Pak: Shigan-un ölma-na köllyöyo?  
 Maep'yowon: Chikhaeng-un se-shigan kölli-go, wanhaeng-un ne-shigan samship-pun köllimnida.  
 Mr Pak: Kagyöög-un-yo?  
 Maep'yowon: Wanhaeng-un p'alch'ön won-igo, chikhaeng-un manoch'ön won-imnida.  
 Chikhaeng-un chwasög-i öлма nam-ji anassümnida.

- Mr Pak** Ne-chari-rul hamkke yeyak ha-l su iss-ülkkayo?  
**Maep'yowon** Chamkkan-man kidaryö-boseyo. Hwagin chom  
hae-bogessümnida. A, ne.  
Ne chari-ga it-kunyo. Hübyönsög-ul wonhaseyo,  
kümyönsög-ul wonhaseyo?  
**Mr Pak** Kümyönsög-uro put'ak hamnida.  
**Maep'yowon** P'yöndo-rul turilkkayo? Wangbog-ul turilkkayo?  
**Mr Pak** Aniyö. Wangbog-uro chuseyo.  
**Maep'yowon** Önje tora-oshigessöyo?  
**Mr Pak** Ilyoil chönyög-eyo.  
**Maep'yowon** Yösö-shi samship-pun kich'a-ga innunde,  
wanhaeng-ieyo.  
Ilyoil chönyög-enun chikhaeng kich'a-nun  
ömnundeyo.  
**Mr Pak** Kürömyön ilyoil ohu-nun-yo?  
**Maep'yowon** Tu-shi samship-pun-e chikhaeng kich'a-ga issöyo.  
**Mr Pak** Kü-gö cho-k'unyo. Ku-göllo chuseyo.  
**Maep'yowon** Modu shibiman won-imnida.  
**Mr Pak** Myöt-pön hom-esö kich'a-ga ttöna-jiyö?  
**Maep'yowon** Ajik morumnida. Ch'ulbal shigan-jön-e  
chönkwangp'an-ul pwa-juseyo.  
**Mr Pak** Ne, algessöyo. Komapsumnida.

### Phrases and expressions

- mwol towa-durilkkayo? *how can I help you?*  
olma nam-ji anassumnida *there are only a few left*

<b>Taegu 대구</b>	a Korean city
<b>wanhaeng 완행</b>	slow train (also called <b>mwugwunghwa</b> )
<b>chikhaeng 직행</b>	fast train, express train (also called <b>saemaul(ho)</b> )
<b>kagyök 가격</b>	price
<b>chwasök 좌석</b>	seating, places
<b>nam- 남-</b>	be left (over), remain
<b>chari 자리</b>	seat
<b>hamkke 함께</b>	together
<b>hwagin ha- 확인하-</b>	check, confirm
<b>hüpyönsök 흡연석</b>	smoker (compartment)
<b>kümyönsök 금연석</b>	no smoking compartment
<b>wonha- 원하-</b>	want, require
<b>put'ak ha- 부탁하-</b>	make a request

<b>p'yöndo 편도</b>	single
<b>wangbok 왕복</b>	return
<b>hom 홈</b>	platform
<b>chulbal 출발</b>	departure
<b>chulbal ha- 출발하-</b>	depart
<b>chöngwangp'an 전광판</b>	electronic notice board
<b>pwa-juseyo 봐주세요</b>	please look at

## Grammar

### 1 -ülkkayo to ask questions

In some of the earlier units of this course you learnt -ülkkayo as a pattern meaning *shall we?* As you will have seen in this lesson, it is also sometimes used to ask a question: *ne-chari-rul hamkke yeyak ha-l su issülkkayo?* (*is it possible to book four seats together?*). There are several patterns like this in Korean where certain verb endings do not always have their basic meaning. The context will always make clear to you which is the correct meaning and in most cases -(ü)lkkayo does mean *shall we?* and is used to make suggestions.

### 2 Making requests

Koreans have a word for *favour* (as in *do a favour for someone*), *putak* and you saw it used in the sentence *kümyönsög-uro put'ak hamnida*. To say *I have a favour to ask*, you say either (*che-ga*) *put'ak issöyo* and then say what the request is or else say the request, and then add *put'ak hamnida* or *put'ak haeyo* (*please, I ask you to do it as a favour*).

### 3 Before and after

You have already learnt the nouns *chön* and *hu* which mean *before* and *after*, respectively. They can be used with nouns, as in *ch'ulbal shigan-jön-e* (*before the time of departure*), or *shiksa-hu-e* (*after the meal*). They can also be used with verbs, although in a slightly different way.

To say *before* (verb) you add *-ki jön-e* to the stem, as in the following examples: *shijak ha-gi jön-e* (*before we begin . . .*) or *hakkyo-e ka-gi jön-e* (*before (I/you) go to school*).

To say *after* (verb) you add *-(ũ)n hu-e* (or *-(ũ)n taum-e*, which has the same meaning) to the verb stem of a processive verb. This *-(ũ)n* is the past modifier which you have already learnt (the present modifier, you will recall, is *-nũn*, as in *kanũn*), e.g. *mǒg-ũn hu-e* (*after eating*); *hakkyo-e ka-n taum-e* (*after going to school*).

In the next dialogue there is more new grammar, but the most important thing is the colloquial language that is used. There are several examples of constructions being used in ways similar to, but not quite the same as what you have seen before and your aim should be to get the drift of what is going on, and not to be put off by the colloquialisms and (at times) seeming lack of grammar rules! This is what it will be like when you first go to Korea and listen to Koreans talking with each other. With a little practice at concentrating on the drift of what is being said, you will find that the Korean you have learnt in this course will stand you in good stead.

## I don't want to go there!

Some colleagues are discussing what they will do after work.

- 윤선생 오늘 저녁 일 끝나고 뭐 할거예요?  
 백선생 일 끝나고요? 모르겠어요. 아직 계획 없어요.  
 윤선생 저녁이나 같이 먹으러 갈까요?  
 백선생 좋은 생각이네요. 그런데 우리 둘만 가요?  
 윤선생 다른 사람도 부르지요.  
 백선생 김 선생하고 이 선생한테 얘기해 볼까요?  
 윤선생 좋지요. 어이, 김 선생, 이 선생!  
 김선생 오늘 저녁 밥 먹으면서 소주 한잔 어때요?  
 윤선생 글썄요, 그냥 불고기하고 소주 한잔 하려고요.  
 김선생 그리고 나서 노래방에도 가고요.  
 백선생 술 마시는 건 좋은데, 저는 불고기는 별로예요.  
 김선생 그리고 노래하는 건 딱 질색이에요.  
 윤선생 아, 그럼 불고기 말고 다른 거 먹으면 되잖아요.  
 김선생 그리고 노래하지 말고 그냥 듣기만 하세요.  
 윤선생 그거 괜찮은 생각이네요. 그런데 오늘 돈이 별로 없는데...  
 김선생 걱정마세요. 오늘 저녁은 내가 한턱 낼게요.  
 윤선생 아 그럼, 좋습니다.

- 백선생 이 선생은 어때요? 같이 가시겠어요?  
 이선생 글썄요, 저도 가고 싶은데, 저는 인천에 가서 상심한 생선회를 먹고 싶은데요.  
 백선생 에이, 인천은 너무 멀어요.  
 윤선생 그리고 생선회는 요즘 너무 비싸고요.  
 이선생 게다가 저는 생선회를 못 먹어요.  
 백선생 좋아요, 좋아. 그냥 해 본 소리예요.  
 윤선생 오늘은 저도 따라가서 불고기에 소주나 먹을 수 밖에 없겠네요.

- Mr Yun Onül chǒnyǒk il kkũnna-go mwo ha-ikǒeyo?  
 Mr Paek Il kkũnna-go-yo? Morũgessǒyo. Ajik kyehoek ǒpsǒyo.  
 Mr Yun Chǒnyǒk-ina kach'i mǒg-urǒ ka-ikkayo?  
 Mr Paek Cho-un saenggag-ineyo. Kũrǒnde uri tũl-man kayo?  
 Mr Yun Tarũn saram-do purũ-jiyo. Kim sǒnsaeng-hago l sǒnsaeng-hant'e yaegi hae-bolkkayo?  
 Mr Paek Cho-ch'iyo. Ōi, Kim sǒnsaeng, l sǒnsaeng! Onül chǒnyǒk pap mǒg-ũmyǒnsǒ soju han jan ǒttaeyo?  
 Mrs Kim Choayo. Kũrǒnde ǒdi ka-ikǒeyo?  
 Mr Yun Kulsseyo. Kũnyang pulgogi-hago soju han-jan ha-ryǒgoyo. Kũrigo nasǒ noraebang-e-do ka-go-yo.  
 Mrs Kim Sul mashinũn kǒn cho-ũnde chǒ-nun pulgogi-nun pyǒllo-eyo. Kũrigo noraehanũn kǒn ttak chilsaeg-ieyo.  
 Mr Paek A, kurǒm pulgogi malgo tarũn kǒ mǒg-ũmyǒn toe-janayo. Kurigo noraeha-ji malgo kũnyang tũt-kiman haseyo.  
 Mrs Kim Kũ-gǒ koench'anun saenggag-ineyo. Kurǒnde onũl ton-i pyǒllǒ ǒmnũnde...  
 Mr Yun Kǒkjǒng maseyo. Onül chǒnyǒg-un nae-ga han t'ǒk nae-ikkeyo.  
 Mrs Kim A, kũrǒm. Chosũmnido.  
 Mr Paek l sǒnsaeng-un ǒttaeyo? Kach'i kashigessǒyo?  
 Mrs Lee Kũlsseyo. Chǒ-do ka-go ship'unde, chǒ-nun Inch'ǒn-e ka-sǒ shingshing han saengsǒn hoe-rul mǒk-ko ship'ũndeyo.  
 Mr Paek Ei, Inch'ǒn-un nǒmu mǒrǒyo. Kurigo saengsǒn hoe-nun yojũm nǒmu pissa-goyo.  
 Mr Yun Kedaga chǒ-nun saengsǒn hoe-rul mon mǒgǒyo.  
 Mrs Lee Choayo. Choa. Kũnyang hae-bon sori-eyo. Onũr-un chǒ-do ttara-ga-sǒ pulgogi-e soju-na mǒg-ul su pakk-e ǒpkenneyo.

## Phrases and expressions

il kkunnago	after finishing work
ajik kyehoek öpsöyo	I don't have any plans yet
cho-ün saenggag-ineyo	that's a good idea
uri tül-man kayo?	is it just the two of us going?
künyang soju han jan	we were just thinking of
haryögoyo	having a soju
chönün pulgogi-nun	I don't really like pulgogi
pyöllo-eyo	
norae hanün kön ttak	I really hate singing
chilsaeg-ieyo	
norae ha-ji malgo	don't sing, just listen instead
tüt-kiman haseyo	
künyang hae-bon sori-eyo	I was just saying it (don't take it too seriously)
soju-na mög-ul su pakk-e	there's nothing for it (no alternative) but to eat soju
öp-kenneyo	I'll pay (for everyone); it's on me
han t'ök naelkkeyo	

kyehoek 계획 plan(s)

purü- 부르- call

öi 어이 hey! (used to call close friends and colleagues)

pap mök- 밥 먹- have a meal

künyang 그냥 simply, just

kürigo nasö 그리그 나서 after that

-ko nasö -고 나서 after (added to verb stems)

pyöllo 별로 not particularly, not really (fond of)

ttak chilsaeg-ieyo hate, is awful (to me)

딱 질색이에요

(noun) malgo 말고 not (noun), instead of (noun) (when suggesting another alternative)

-kiman haseyo -기만 하세요 just do (verb)

pyöllo öps- 별로 없- have almost none, scarcely have any

inch'ön 인천 Korean port near Seoul

sshingshing ha- 싱싱하- be fresh

saengsön 생선 fish

hoe 회 raw meat

ei 에이 hey, come off it!

kedaga 게다가 on top of that

ttarü- 따르- follow

-(u) su pakk-e öps- there is nothing for it but to (verb)

-(으) = 수 밖에 없-

## Grammar

## 1 More ways of saying 'afterwards'

You can add the ending -ko na-sö to any present tense processive verb base to mean *after* (verb):

il ha-go na-sö sul han-jan hapshida  
After finishing work let's have a drink

-ko na-sö can be abbreviated to -kosö, and sometimes even to just -ko.

## 2 Informal sentences

This dialogue shows the way in which Koreans can add particles to the end of verbs in colloquial speech to give extra nuances to what they are saying. They can also make incomplete sentences which they complete simply by adding the polite particle -yo. You do not need to worry about learning rules for this kind of thing, since in most circumstances you will want to use a more formal and grammatical style of speaking when you first begin to speak Korean in Korea. It is very useful to recognize what is going on in colloquial speech, however, and as you spend more time speaking with Koreans you will quickly learn to do this kind of thing for yourself.

You can miss out the rest of this section if you wish, as the explanation may seem a bit complicated. Your main task should be to completely familiarize yourself with the dialogue, almost to the extent of being able to say it by heart. For the adventurous, however, here are two sentences from the dialogue with an explanation of how they have been constructed.

## Soju han jan haryögoyo

You have previously met the -(ü)ryögo pattern, with the meaning *with the intention of*. Normally it is used in the pattern (clause A)-üryögo (clause B), as in *hangung mal paeu-ryögo ch'aek tassöyo*, but here the pattern is simply (clause A)-uryögo-yo. Clause B has been omitted in casual speech and the polite particle added to round the construction off. The full form would have been something like *soju han jan haryögö önu-sulchib-ina kalkka haeyo* (*we were thinking of going to some pub or other to have a drink*), but this is cut down to what would translate as *to have a drink* – or, in better English, *we were just thinking of going for a drink* and is made into a sentence simply by adding -yo to the -(ü)ryögo pattern.

**Kürigo na-sö noraebang-e-do ka-go-yo**

This means *after that (we were thinking of) going to a noraebang too*. The -go at the end is the clause ending -ko that normally means *and* when you are going to add another clause. However, in this case, the meaning is *as well, in addition*. This sentence is being added to the one that has been said previously to indicate that this is also part of the plan as well. Then the particle yo is added to round it all off.

**3 Negatives with pyölla**

Sentences with negative verbs in them (with an and mot) can be modified by inserting the word pyölla in them, to mean *not particularly*. This will be clearer with examples:

kogi-rul pyölla an choa haeyo    *I don't particularly like meat*  
pyölla ka-go ship'chi anayo    *I don't particularly want to go*  
pyölla chaemi öpsöyo            *it's not particularly interesting*

The dialogue also has a pyölla sentence in it, which is slightly different. Chö-nun pulgogi-nun pyölla-eyo. This is a more colloquial form, putting the copula onto the end of the word pyölla. But you can see that it is in a sense an abbreviated form of chö-nun pulgogi-nun pyölla choa ha-ji anayo, so the pattern is essentially the same. You should stick to the full form with a negative verb most of the time and leave the colloquial, abbreviated form to native speakers.

**4 Not one thing, but another instead**

You can stay *instead of* (noun), or *not* (noun) by putting the word malgo after the noun, as you can see in these examples:

Sagwa-malgo kogi sa-pshida  
*Let's not buy apples, let's buy meat; instead of apples, let's buy meat*

Chapji-malgo shinmun-ul ing-nün kö choa haeyo  
*It's not magazines, it's newspapers I enjoy reading*

Pulguksa-malgo san-e ka-nün ke öttaeyo?  
*How about going to the mountain instead of Pwulguksa?*

You can use a similar pattern to say *instead of* (verb). Simply add -ji malgo (this is the same -ji that you use in the long negative, or in -ji maseyo). Look at the following examples, the first is from the dialogue:

Hurae ha-ji malgo tut-kiman haseyo  
*Don't sing (do a song), just listen (instead)*

Öp'i mashi-ji malgo ch'a-na tuseyo  
*Don't drink coffee, have some tea or something instead*

Wae kongbu ha-ji malgo iyagi-man hara-go haeyo?  
*Why are you saying just talking and not studying (instead)?*

**6 Just doing something**

The sentence tut-kiman haseyo means *just listen!* The form kiman ha- added to processive verbs means *just* (verb) or *only* (verb). Here are examples:

Mal ha-ji an-k'o mök-kiman haessöyo  
*We didn't say anything, we just ate*

Tüt-kiman haeyo?  
*Are you only listening (rather than participating)?*

**6 There's nothing for it, but to . . .**

When you feel you have no option but to do something or other, or that you are obliged to do something, you can use the pattern -(ö)l su pakk-e öpsö-. Here are examples:

Ea-l su pakk-e öpsöyo.  
*There's nothing for it but to go; I'll have to go*

Pusa-jiman sa-l su pakk-e öpsöyo  
*Although it's expensive, there's nothing for it but to buy it*

**Practice**

1 Translate the following sentences into English.

- 과식이 얼마 남지 않았어요.
- 다른 거 먹으면 안돼요.
- 황복을 드릴까요?
- 등산하는 건 딱 질색이에요.
- 제가 갈 수 밖에 없겠네요.
- 그냥 야구하려고요.
- 오늘 오후 목포에 가는 기차 있어요?
- 그거 꽤 좋은 생각이네요.

- 2 For each of the following say that you will go out *before* doing them and then that you will go out *after* doing them.
- (Eating) lunch.
  - Telephoning your mother.
  - Having fun (nol-).
  - Reading the newspaper.
- 3 Look at the following information about train availability and then answer the questions.

열차 (기차) 시간표			
목적지	출발	도착	
서울	8:00	11:00	직행
대구	20:00	23:30	직행
부산	7:00	12:00	완행
광주	13:00	18:00	완행
서울	10:00	15:00	완행
대전	14:00	16:00	직행

- 밤 늦게 대구에 가고 싶어요. 기차가 몇시에 출발해요?
  - 서울에 가는 직행은 몇시에 떠나요?
  - 언제 도착해요?
  - 대전에 가는 완행 있어요?
  - 부산에 가는 완행 기차 있어요?
- 4 Make up three sentences saying that there is nothing for it but to ...
- go home
  - pay the money
  - get up at six in the morning

- 5 Make up a set of sentences, each one using the following sets of information and using (noun)-malgo or (verb)-ji malgo. For example, for the first one you could make up a sentence which said *I want to eat fruit, not meat.*



- 6 Translate the following sentences into Korean.
- Buy something to eat before the departure time.
  - Shall we have a talk to your parents?
  - I'd like to go too, but it's a long way.
  - Can I book three seats together?
  - Let's go to Inchön, not to Seoul.
  - What shall we do after finishing work?
  - When are you going to come back?
  - Do you like eating raw fish?

# 14 review

## Introduction

So, you have virtually reached the end of this course. This unit contains more exercises which practise the situations and grammar you have been learning in the last six units. Most of these exercises are Korean to English or English to Korean translations, since that is the best way to check that you have really mastered the material in the units. Make sure you are comfortable with the topics in the list that follows and be sure to revise the grammar notes for any of the major patterns you are not quite happy with. It would be a good idea also to read through all the dialogues in the units once again. You will find there are things that you felt a bit uneasy about at the time that are now clearer to you and you are sure to understand more fully what is going on grammatically in the dialogues. Even though you have reached the end of the course, you will find that simply reading through the dialogues every so often will help you to retain the things you have learnt.

## Topic revision

The following list shows the main topics that have been covered in the last six units. You should feel capable of handling these topics at a simple level should you need to when you are in Korea. If you feel unsure about a particular topic, you should go over the dialogue again more thoroughly, and should revise the expressions and vocabulary that go with it. Of course there will still be many things that you are not able to say in Korean, but with the tools we have given you you should be able to succeed in carrying out many language tasks, some at quite a high level, and should have a more fascinating and enjoyable experience as

a result whenever you visit Korea or communicate with Korean people.

- advanced phone conversations
- cancelling appointments
- dating and talking about other people
- describing what you did
- buying presents
- retorting
- policemen and traffic offences
- lost property
- describing objects
- feeling ill
- getting medicine
- buying and comparing clothes
- trying on clothes
- booking in a hotel and asking about facilities
- complaining
- train journeys
- arranging to go out

## Practice

- 1 Translate the following into English.
  - a Ōmōni-ga yōnghwa-rul choa ha-nikka abōji taeshin bidio po-myōn toeyo.
  - b Sut'uresu-ga wonin-in kōt kat'ayo.
  - c Sashil aju chungyo han sōryu-ga tūrō-issōyo.
  - d Ch'ōngpaji-ga mot ssūge toeōssōyo.
  - e Uri chipsaram-i ama al-go iss-ulkōeyo.
  - f Naeil chōnyōk il kkūnnago san-e ka-l kyehoek issōyo?
  - g Tangshin-un nae ūgyōn-ul hangsang choa ha-ji anayo.
  - h Uri pang mun-un yōlli-ji-do anayo.
  - i Tosōgwan-i ōdi-inji chom karūch'yō-jushigessōyo?  
(tosōg-wan = library)
  - j Kūrōk'e sur-ul mani masyōssōyo?
  - k Yōjūm aju yuhaeng ha-nun sut'ail-ieyo.
  - l Myōnhōcchūng chom poyō-juseyo.
- 2 For each of the following pictures make up a question which asks if someone has ever tried doing them. Then make up an answer which says *yes, I have* and another which says *you did it yesterday, as a matter of fact.* (dance: ch'um ch'u-)



3 Make up an appropriate response to the following questions or requests.

- a 김선생님 좀 바꿔 주세요.
- b 영화구경을 좋아하세요?
- c 데이트할 때 보통 어디 가세요?
- d 이 청바지 질이 어때요?
- e 약속을 자주 취소하는 사람이세요?

4 Translate the following into Korean.

- a I really didn't see the sign.
- b You can wear it with jeans.
- c I'm ringing to cancel my appointment.
- d Is there a telephone and TV in the room?
- e The service is rubbish!
- f We bought him socks last year.
- g It looks a bit small.
- h I thought so.
- i I'd like to go to Inchön and eat raw fish.
- j What does your car look like?
- k Would you write a letter for me?
- l My head hurts so much I can't sleep.

5 Your friend has a new girlfriend and you quiz him about her. Make up questions to fill in the following fact file:

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Age \_\_\_\_\_

Occupation \_\_\_\_\_

Father's name \_\_\_\_\_

How met? \_\_\_\_\_

What do together? \_\_\_\_\_

Likes/Dislikes \_\_\_\_\_

6 Translate the following into English.

- a 잘못하면 아주 위험해요.
- b 북동씨한테 전할 말이 있어요?
- c 손님 방까지 배달해 드립니다.
- d 어제 여기 왔었는데요. 잠바를 놓고 갔어요.
- e 아가씨가 질이 좋다고 했어요.
- f 여자 친구 생겨서 매일 나가는 것 같아요.
- g 이야기하지 말고 듣기만 하세요.
- h 식후에 한 알씩 하루 두 번 드세요.
- i 이거 봐. 질이 별로 안 좋아.
- j 혹시 어디 갔는지 아세요?
- k 새 텔레비전은 어떨까요?
- l 남대문에서는 비슷한 게 두 배나 더 싸요.

7 Complete the following dialogue.

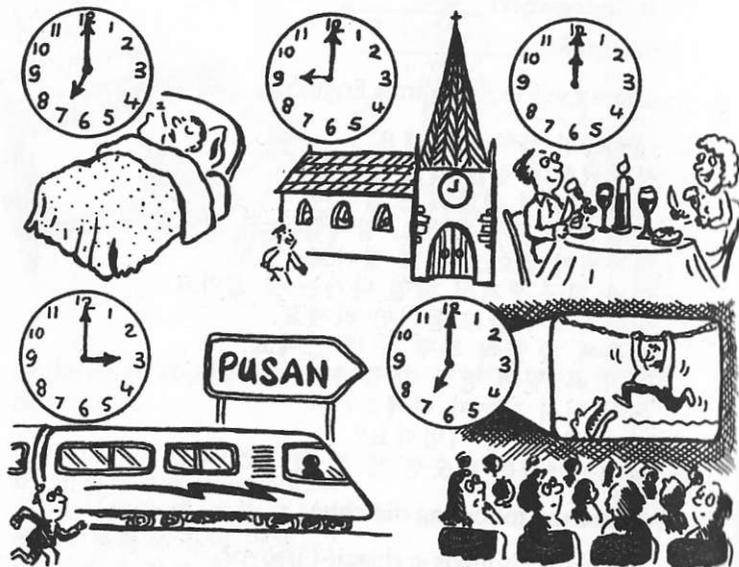
- A Naeil chönyöög-e shigan-i issöyo?  
 You (No, an urgent matter has come up. Why?)  
 A Künyang naga-go ship'önnündeyo.  
 You (How about Monday?)  
 A Wolyoil-lar-un aböji-üy saengshin-ieyo.  
 You (Really? Will there be a party?)  
 A Aniyö. Künyang shiktang-e ka-sö kach'i chönyök ha-nün kö-eyo.  
 You (What are you going to buy for him?)  
 A Yangmal-yo. Hangsang yangmal sayo.  
 You (How about Tuesday? Do you have time then?)  
 A Ne, choayo. Nait'-u ka-lkkayo? (nait'u: night club)  
 You (That's a good idea.)

8 Rewrite the dialogue in question 7 using the informal and plain styles of speech.

9 Put the following sentences into the formal style.

- Chigŭm ōdi kaseyo?
- Chumun haessōyo?
- Ilgop-shi-e irōnayo.
- Ppalli hae-juseyo.
- Chō-saram-un pulch'injōl han saram-ieyo.

10 The following pictures tell what you did last Saturday. Write an account of what you did, putting in as many details as you can according to what the pictures suggest.



11 Translate the following into Korean.

- I started meeting her often from that time.
- Don't be surprised even if you have no energy (strength).
- You help this time.
- Although it might look similar, it isn't.
- Be (more) careful from now on.
- We'll go straight to the restaurant and eat.
- It's turned out well then. Goodbye!
- This evening I'll pay.
- What time did you leave our department store?
- Mistakes do happen.
- Shall I introduce you?
- Would you like to try it on?

## Unit 1

## Where are you off to?

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Jaemin         | Jaemin! Hello/How are you!                                    |
| Jaemin         | Hello! How have you been getting along?                       |
| Jaemin         | Fine, fine. Where are you going?                              |
| Jaemin         | Right now I'm off to the city centre.                         |
| Jaemin         | What are you going to do in the city centre?                  |
| Jaemin         | I'm going to buy some bread.                                  |
| Jaemin         | I'm also going to buy bread in the city centre.               |
| Jaemin         | Let's go together!  |
| Jaemin         | Yes, let's.   |
| <b>Cheers!</b> |   |
| Jaemin         | Excuse me/Waiter! Do you have any soju?                       |
| Ajōssi         | Yes, yes. We have. Soju, beer, western spirits – all of them. |
| Jaemin         | Well then, give us a beer and one soju, please.               |
| Ajōssi         | Yes. I understand.  |
| Jaemin         | And we also need some snacks/side dishes. What do you have?   |
| Ajōssi         | Fruit, squid, dry snacks, p'ajon – we've got all of those.    |
| Jaemin         | Then give me some fruit and some squid, please.               |
| Ajōssi         | Here you are.   |
| Jaemin         | Thank you. Enjoy it! (Good appetite!)                         |
| Jaemin         | Cheers!   |

## Unit 2

## Long time, no see!

Mr Pak Mr Kim! How are you?  
 Mr Kim Ah, Mr Pak! Hello there!  
 Mr Pak Long time, no see!  
 Mr Kim Yes, that's right. It's really been a long time.  
 Mr Pak How have you been getting along?  
 Mr Kim Yes, fine. How's business these days?  
 Mr Pak It's so-so.  
 This is my wife.  
 Mr Kim Oh, really? Pleased to meet you. I've heard a lot about you.  
 Mr Pak's wife Pleased to meet you. I'm Yunhuy Jang.  
 Mr Kim I'm Jinyang Kim. I'm pleased that I've met you.

## It's not me!

Mr O Excuse me!  
 Mr Lee Yes?  
 Mr O Are you the Korean language teacher?  
 Mr Lee No. I'm not a Korean language teacher. I'm a Japanese language teacher.  
 Mr O Ah, I'm sorry. Isn't this the Korean department's office?  
 Mr Lee No, this isn't the Korean department. This is the Japanese department.  
 Mr O Right. Where is the Korean department office, please?  
 Mr Lee It's over there.  
 Mr O Excuse me, is this the Korean department's office?  
 Mr Kim Yes. What brings you here? (Can I help you?)  
 Mr O I've come to meet the Korean language teacher.

## Unit 3

## Sorry, wrong number!

Tony Hello? I'm sorry, but can I speak to Mr Kim, please?  
 Mr Pak There is no such person here.  
 Tony Isn't that 389 2506?

Mr Pak No. You've dialled the wrong number.  
 Tony I'm sorry.  
 Tony Hello? I'm sorry, but can I speak to Mr Kim, please?  
 Mr Kim's wife Wait a moment, please.  
 Mr Kim Yes? Speaking.  
 Tony Ah, hello. I'm Tony from the British embassy.  
 Mr Kim Ah, hello! Long time, no see!  
 Tony Do you have any free time this lunchtime?  
 Mr Kim Yes, I do.  
 Tony Then I'd like to buy you lunch.  
 Mr Kim Yes, fine. Let's meet at 12 in front of Lotte Hotel.  
 Tony Great. So, I'll see you in a little while.

## Are you ready to order yet?

Waiter Welcome! Please take a seat over here.  
 Mr Kim Thank you.  
 Waiter Would you like anything to drink?  
 Mr Kim We'll have some beer first, please.  
 Mr Kim Do you like Korean food?  
 Tony Yes, I like it a lot, but I can't eat spicy food so well.  
 Mr Kim Then let's eat pulgogi or kalbi.  
 Tony Yes, fine. And I'd like to eat some naengmyon as well.  
 Waiter Would you like to order?  
 Tony Pulgogi for two people and two dishes of naengmyon, please.  
 Waiter Would you like water naengmyon or pibim naengmyon?  
 Tony Water naengmyon, please.  
 Waiter Enjoy your meal!  
 Tony Waitress! More water and more kimchi, please.

## Unit 4

## How much is it all together?

Assistant What are you looking for?  
 Chris Do you have dictionaries?

- Assistant Yes. A Korean dictionary?  
Chris Yes, I'd like both a Korean-English dictionary and an English-Korean dictionary.
- Assistant Here you are.  
Chris How much is it?  
Assistant Each volume is 10,000 won; 20,000 won all together.
- Chris Do you have Chinese character dictionaries also?  
Assistant We have three kinds of Chinese character dictionary.  
Chris The cheapest one, please.  
Assistant Just a moment . . . here it is.  
Chris Thank you. How much is it all together?  
Assistant The Chinese character dictionary is 30,000 won . . . therefore all together it's 50,000 won.
- Chris The cheapest one is 30,000 won? How much is the most expensive one, then?! 100,000 won?!
- Assistant Oh, I'm sorry; I've made a mistake. It's 30,000 won all together. Would you like a receipt?  
Chris Yes please.  
Assistant OK. Here it is. Goodbye!  
Chris Goodbye.

### Finding the way

- Mr Pak Excuse me, can you tell me where the bank is around here?  
Bank Clerk A If you go left at that post office over there, there is the Sango'p bank.  
Mr Pak Thank you.  
Mr Pak I'd like to change some English money into Korean money.  
Bank Clerk B We don't deal with foreign currency at this bank. Please go to the Korea Exchange Bank.  
Mr Pak Where is there a Korea Exchange Bank?  
Bank Clerk B Cross over the road and go towards Chongno. At the crossroads in Chongno, if you go right there is a Korea Exchange Bank.  
Mr Pak Is it far from here?  
Bank Clerk B No. It's about five minutes on foot.

### Unit 6

#### Is this the bus for Tongdaemun market?

- Mr Kim Excuse me, is there a bus for Tongdaemun market here?  
Mr Lee I don't have a clue, I'm not from Seoul.  
Mr Kim Excuse me, is there a bus to Tongdaemun market from here?  
Mrs O No. You can't get a bus to Tongdaemun market from here. But if you get bus number 20 it will take you to Namdaemun market. Namdaemun market? What is there at Namdaemun market?  
Mrs O What is there? There's nothing they don't sell at Namdaemun market.  
Mr Kim Are there more goods than at Tongdaemun market?  
Mrs O In my opinion Namdaemun market has more goods than Tongdaemun, and is more interesting. However, they don't sell monkeys at Namdaemun market. They do sell them at Tongdaemun.  
Mr Kim Is that true?! Although . . . I don't need a monkey.  
Mrs O Then take the number 20 bus.  
Mr Kim Where do I get it?  
Mrs O Take it at the stop straight across the road.  
Mr Kim How much is the fare?  
Mrs O My, you must be a real stranger here (country bumpkin)! It's 400 won.  
Mr Kim Thank you.  
Mrs O Hurry up. The bus is coming!

#### This fruit doesn't look too good!

- Minja How much are the apples here?  
Chômwon A One box is 30,000 won.  
Minja That's too expensive. Will you cut the price a bit?  
Chômwon A OK, you can take a box for 28,000 won.  
Minja It's still expensive.  
Chômwon A Then go and try somewhere else!  
Minja Bad luck all morning (today, since the morning)!

- Minja These apples don't look too good (fresh).  
Some of them have gone bad.
- Chömwon B Really? Then I'll cut the price a bit for you.
- Minja How much will you give me them for?
- Chömwon B Just give me 31,000 won.
- Minja What?! That's even more expensive than the  
stall next door!
- Chömwon B All right. Then just give me 27,000 won.
- Minja Please cut me a bit more off the price.
- Chömwon B All right, then! Just pay 25,000 a box.
- Minja Thank you. Three boxes please.

## Unit 6

### Off to the mountains

- Mr Kim The weather's really good today.
- Tony Yes. The weather's better in Korea than England.
- Mr Kim What are you going to do tomorrow? If you  
don't have anything on, shall we go to the  
mountains?
- Tony I do want to go, but tomorrow I decided to go  
shopping at Tongdaemun market with my wife.
- Mr Kim How about next Sunday, then?
- Tony Next Sunday I'm thinking of going to Pulguksa  
with some friends from university.
- Mr Kim Next Sunday won't do either, then. When would be  
okay?
- Tony The Sunday after that would probably be fine.
- Mr Kim All right. Then let's go that following Sunday.
- Tony I like mountain climbing too. But there aren't  
many mountains in Britain so I haven't been able  
to do much. By the way, which mountain shall  
we go to?
- Mr Kim Tobongsan mountain would be convenient.
- Tony Then shall we meet at the entrance to Tobongsan  
mountain?

### I've got a nasty headache!

- Jaehoon I'm going into town. Shall we go together?
- Yongt'ae I don't know . . . I don't feel too good.
- Jaehoon You don't feel well *again*? You're always  
pretending to be ill!
- Yongt'ae No I'm not. That's not true. Today I really am ill.

- Jaehoon What is it this time?
- Yongt'ae I've got a nasty headache. My head hurts.
- Jaehoon Is that all? Don't worry - it's perhaps because the  
weather is hot.
- Yongt'ae I don't think so. I have stomach ache as well.
- Jaehoon Is it bad?
- Yongt'ae Yes. It hurts a lot.
- Jaehoon Then let's go to the chemist to buy some  
medicine.
- Yongt'ae I can't. I have no energy (strength). Besides, my  
legs hurt.
- Jaehoon Your legs, too? It seems like your whole body  
hurts! Is there anywhere that doesn't hurt?
- Yongt'ae Shut up! Don't make fun of me. I need some  
medicine.
- Jaehoon I've got a cure-all medicine here - it's alcohol!  
It's better than medicine, you know!
- Yongt'ae Don't make jokes. I can't drink alcohol. I really  
need to go to the hospital.

## Unit 8

### She's just gone out

- Mr Yun Hello?
- Jaemok Hello. Can I speak to Chongmin, please?
- Mr Yun Yes, hold on please. I'm sorry, she was  
here until a little while ago, but she has just  
gone out.
- Jaemok Oh dear. Have you any idea where she might have  
gone?
- Mr Yun I don't have a clue. Just a moment. Maybe my  
wife will know.
- Wife Tonight Chongmin has gone out to see a movie  
with her boyfriend.
- Jaemok Really? That's strange, she was supposed  
(lit: *decided*) to meet me this evening . . .
- Wife Oh dear. Well, she's gone out on a date with a  
different guy and she won't be back until late.
- Jaemok Oh well, it's turned out well then - I was just  
ringing up to cancel. Something came up today.
- Wife Oh really? It has turned out well. Do you have a  
message for Chongmin?
- Jaemok No, I don't. Goodbye.

**What did you do last night?**

- Yongt'ae Taegy, how are you doing?!
- Taegy Hi there! How are things?
- Yongt'ae Nowadays I'm a bit busy. I've (just) got a girlfriend, so I'm even more busy!
- Taegy I thought so. What's her name?
- Yongt'ae She's called Kim Chongmin. She graduated last year from Seoul National University. Now she's working for Hyundai cars.
- Taegy How did you meet?
- Yongt'ae My friend did an introduction for me. At first I didn't like her that much, but a month later we met by chance at a party. We started meeting regularly from then on.
- Taegy And now you're meeting her and dating nearly every day, are you?
- Yongt'ae More or less!
- Taegy I tried to ring you last night, but you'd gone out then too. Where did you go last night?
- Yongt'ae Last night? I don't remember. I expect we went somewhere or other.
- Taegy You don't remember?! Had you drunk so much?!
- Yongt'ae You mean *me* drinking? (lit. *who was drinking?*) You're the one who drinks every day (on the contrary).
- Taegy Anyhow, where did you go?
- Yongt'ae We went to a noraebang, my girlfriend really likes noraebangs.
- Taegy Where did you go after coming out of the noraebang?
- Yongt'ae We played a bit of table tennis.
- Taegy Is that all? Tell me honestly!
- Yongt'ae It's true! Nothing happened!

**Unit 9****We bought him that last year!**

- Wife It's granddad's birthday tomorrow.
- Husband What, already?
- Wife Yes. We're going to have to decide what to buy him.
- Husband Can't you decide? I'm busy.
- Wife I always decide. Please help this time.

Husband

Wife

All right. Why don't we buy him a jumper?  
He's got ten already. He doesn't need another one.  
What about a shirt then?  
He doesn't need a shirt either.  
A book?  
You know he doesn't like reading.  
Since grandma likes reading it would be OK if she read it instead!  
Don't joke. Try making a better suggestion.  
What about an umbrella?  
He doesn't go out when it rains.  
Some socks, then?  
We bought him that last year.  
How about a new electric razor?  
We bought him that the year before. Besides, he doesn't shave himself properly (*frequently*).  
You see?! You don't like my suggestions.  
You'd better decide, like I said at first!

**I'm sorry, I really didn't know!**

- Policeman Excuse me. Please show me your driving licence.
- Driver Why? What's the matter?
- Policeman You really don't know?
- Driver What are you talking about?
- Policeman Just look at the cars parked here. The cars have all been parked in the same direction.  
So what?
- Driver OK then, didn't you see that red one-way signpost over there?
- Driver Ah, it's a one-way street! I'm sorry. I really didn't know.
- Policeman You've committed a serious offence. It's very dangerous and there is a large fine if you go into a one-way street the wrong way.  
I really didn't see the sign. Please let me off this once.  
Be careful from now on. The fine is 50,000 won.  
Thank you very much and keep up the good work.

**Unit 10****What did you do with it?**

Sunnim

Excuse me, I was here yesterday with some friends and I left my bag behind.

- Chongöpwon Just let me go and have a look. Can you describe your bag?  
 Sonnim Yes . . . it's very big, black and made of leather.  
 Chongöpwon There's a briefcase. Is that it?  
 Sonnim No, it's not a briefcase.  
 Chongöpwon No, we don't seem to have anything. Was there anything important inside?  
 Sonnim Yes, actually. There were some important documents, some books and my bank cards.  
 Chongöpwon Please wait a moment. I will ask the manager.  
 Sajang Hello, how can I help you?  
 Sonnim I've lost my bag - yesterday I ate here and left it behind (*put it down and left*).  
 Sajang What time did you leave the restaurant?  
 Sonnim About 11 p.m., I think.  
 Sajang Around closing time . . . Ah yes, I remember now. There was a bag when we were cleaning this morning.  
 Sonnim What did you do with it?  
 Sajang I sent it to the police station. They are keeping it there.  
 Sonnim Can you tell me where the police station is?  
 Sajang Yes, go out of the restaurant and turn left and it's on the third (*small*) street on your right.  
 Sonnim Thank you very much. Goodbye.

### Nasty headaches

- Yaksa Hello, can I help you?  
 Mr Pak Yes, I've got a very bad headache; I wonder if you could give me some medicine.  
 Yaksa Yes, certainly. When did you get it?  
 Mr Pak It came yesterday. I've been working very hard at work and have had a lot of stress - probably overwork and stress is the reason.  
 Yaksa It could be. Do your eyes hurt at all?  
 Mr Pak Yes, they do a bit.  
 Yaksa Have you been able to sleep?  
 Mr Pak No, my head hurts too much, and so I can't sleep.  
 Yaksa I see. It's probably linked to stress, then.  
 Mr Pak I recommend these tablets.  
 How often should I take them?

- Yaksa You can take one every four hours while it's very bad. When it gets a bit easier, then just take one tablet after meals three times a day.  
 Mr Pak Are there any side-effects?  
 Yaksa When you take the medicine you will feel drowsy so take care. Don't be surprised if you feel tired easily.  
 Mr Pak OK. Thank you very much.

### Unit 11

#### Would you like to try it on?

- Miho Look at that shirt; it's really nice.  
 Pröngsu Well, I think the design is a bit old-fashioned.  
 Miho No, I like them. Agassi, how much are those shirts?  
 Chömwon A 8,000 won.  
 Miho Wow, that's really cheap.  
 Pröngsu Yeah, but look at it, the quality's not very good.  
 Miho Oh, I don't know. Shall we go and look somewhere else then?  
 Chömwon B Welcome! What are you looking for?  
 Miho Yes, I'm looking for casual shirts. (*Something in*) a bright colour. Something stylish and good quality which I can wear with jeans.  
 Chömwon B What about these? This style is very popular at the moment.  
 Miho What is it made of?  
 Chömwon B 100% cotton. Would you like to try one on?  
 Miho Yes, please . . .  
 Does it suit me?  
 Do you think it suits me?  
 Chömwon Ah, that looks very nice.  
 Miho Do you think it suits me?  
 Pröngsu Yes. But it seems/looks a bit small.  
 Chömwon Would you like to try a bigger one?  
 Miho Yes, please.  
 Chömwon Here you are.  
 Pröngsu That looks a bit better.  
 Chömwon Ah, that looks super.  
 Miho By the way, how much is it?

- Chömwon 32,000 won.  
 Minhó What?  
 Chömwon Why? That's a very good price. Only 32,000 won.  
 Pyöngsu It sounds a bit expensive to me!  
 Minhó At Namdaemun they had a similar one for only 8,000 won.  
 Chömwon Ah yes, at Namdaemun. It looks the same, but the quality is very different. If you buy clothes at Namdaemun, they become unusable in just two or three months, so you have to buy new ones.  
 Pyöngsu Well, I don't know. Do you reckon this shirt will last four times as long, then?  
 Chömwon Oh, at least. And it will be a much better fit.  
 Minhó Mmm. I'll go and think about it, I think.

## Unit 12

### Do you have a spare room?

- Sonnim Do you have any free rooms, please?  
 Chuin Yes, we do. Would you like beds or sleeping on the floor?  
 Sonnim One with bed and one with floor sleeping.  
 Chuin Certainly. It will be 50,000 won for the room with a bed, and 40,000 for the room with floor sleeping. How many nights are you staying?  
 Chuin Three nights, please. We may stay a little longer than that (I don't know).  
 Sonnim If you book for five nights or more, we offer a 5% discount.  
 Chuin Oh, I'll talk about that with my wife. Is breakfast included in the price?  
 Sonnim Yes, breakfast is included. Between 7 and 10 a.m. please go to the basement restaurant. Or you can have breakfast brought to your room for 2,000 won extra per person.  
 Chuin No, we'll go to the restaurant, thank you. What other facilities does the hotel have?  
 Sonnim We have a swimming pool, a sauna, a games room, a noraebang, a bar, a Korean restaurant and a western one.  
 Chuin Is there a TV and a phone in the rooms?  
 Sonnim Of course, and there is also a mini-bar.

- Chuin Oh, that's excellent. It would be better to book for five nights, then. My wife will probably like that.
- The towel is dirty and the food is cold**  
 Sonnim Excuse me, I'd like to speak to the manager, please.  
 Chongópwon Excuse me, but is there a problem?  
 Sonnim Yes, I have something to say about the hotel service.  
 Chongópwon Is there any chance you can tell me what the problem is?  
 Sonnim I'd like to speak to the manager direct about it.  
 Chongópwon Very well, sir. Hold on a moment please.  
 Chibaecin Hello, I'm the manager what is the problem?  
 Sonnim It seems that there are many problems with the service at this hotel. The staff are unfriendly and unhelpful; this morning we went in for breakfast and the food was cold. Yesterday it was the same.  
 Chibaecin Really? I'm very sorry to hear that. Did you speak to the waiter about it?  
 Sonnim Of course I spoke to the waitress! She was impolite, and while saying that she couldn't understand my Korean, she said that the food was fine. It wasn't; it was cold and the taste was awful.  
 Chibaecin I'm extremely sorry, sir. We always try to do our best, but sometimes mistakes happen. I'll make sure that I speak to the kitchen staff right away.  
 Sonnim And that's not all. This morning I asked for my towel to be changed and the new towel was very dirty and they still haven't cleaned my son's room.  
 Chibaecin This is strange. We don't usually get any complaints like this.  
 Sonnim Even that is not all. The television in our room has broken down and the fridge door won't even open. I have to say that quite frankly the service and facilities are rubbish.  
 Chibaecin I'm sorry but we also don't need guests like you who complain so much in our hotel. Please leave right away. We will refund your money.

## Unit 13

## Two to Taegu

- Maep'yowon Can I help you?  
 Mr Pak Are there any trains to Taegu this evening please?  
 Maep'yowon Yes, there are two trains, a slow one at 5.30, and a fast one at 7.45.  
 Mr Pak How long do they take?  
 Maep'yowon The fast one takes three hours, the slow one four hours 30 minutes.  
 Mr Pak What about the price?  
 Maep'yowon Yes, the slow one is 8,000 won, the fast 15,000, and we only have a few seats left for the fast one.  
 Mr Pak Can we book four seats together?  
 Maep'yowon Please wait a minute. Just let me check . . . yes, that's fine. There are four seats available. Non-smoking or smoking?  
 Mr Pak Non-smoking, please.  
 Maep'yowon Would you like single tickets or return?  
 Mr Pak No, return please.  
 Maep'yowon When are you coming back?  
 Mr Pak Sunday evening.  
 Maep'yowon There's a train at 6.30; but it's a slow one. There is no fast train on Sunday evening.  
 Mr Pak What about Sunday afternoon?  
 Maep'yowon Yes, there's one at 2.30.  
 Mr Pak That'll be okay. We'll take the fast one, please.  
 Maep'yowon That will be 120,000 won altogether, please.  
 Mr Pak What platform does the train go from?  
 Maep'yowon I don't know yet. Before the time of departure look at the electronic notice board.  
 Mr Pak Okay, thank you very much.

**I don't want to go there!**

- Mr Yun What are you doing after work this evening?  
 Mr Pak After work? Don't know. I haven't got anything planned.  
 Mr Yun What about going out for a meal?  
 Mr Pak Sounds a good idea. Just the two of us?  
 Mr Yun We could invite some others. What about Mr Kim and Mr Lee?

- Mr Pak Yeah, sure! Hey, Mrs Kim, Mrs Lee! Do you fancy going out for a meal tonight?  
 Mrs Kim OK, but where are we going to?  
 Mr Yun We could go and eat pulgogi, and of course we could drink soju and then go out to a noraebang or something.  
 Mrs Kim I like drinking, but I don't particularly like pulgogi, and I hate singing.  
 Mr Pak Well *you* don't have to eat pulgogi, you can have something else. And you can just listen instead of singing.  
 Mrs Kim Yeah, that's fair enough. But I don't have much spare cash right now.  
 Mr Yun Don't worry. I'll buy.  
 Mrs Kim Yes, okay then. That's nice of you.  
 Mr Pak What about you, Mr Lee, would you like to come?  
 Mrs Lee I would like to go, but I'd prefer to go out to Inchön and eat raw fish, though.  
 Mr Pak No, it's too far and it's too expensive.  
 Mr Yun Besides, I can't eat raw fish.  
 Mrs Lee OK, OK, it was only an idea. I guess I'll just have to come and eat pulgogi and soju!

## Exercises on Korean alphabet

## Exercise 3

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 Pakistan    | 2 Mexico          |
| 3 New Zealand | 4 The Netherlands |
| 5 Sweden      | 6 Denmark         |
| 7 Indonesia   | 8 Poland          |
| 9 Canada      | 10 America        |

## Exercise 4

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 hotel         | 2 piano      |
| 3 computer      | 4 television |
| 5 radio         | 6 taxi       |
| 7 lemon         | 8 ice cream  |
| 9 hamburger     | 10 sandwich  |
| 11 orange juice | 12 tennis    |
| 13 camera       | 14 tomato    |

## Exercises on romanization

## Exercise 1

- |         |       |
|---------|-------|
| 1 재민    | 2 가요  |
| 3 지금    | 4 양주  |
| 5 마른 안주 | 6 중국  |
| 7 마시다   | 8 밥   |
| 9 진짜    | 10 우리 |

## Exercise 2

- |               |         |
|---------------|---------|
| 1 Öttaeyo?    | 2 Saram |
| 3 Sönsaengnim | 4 Aniyö |

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 5 Samushil  | 6 Mannada    |
| 7 Miguk     | 8 Hakkyo     |
| 9 Taesagwan | 10 Chömschim |

## Unit 1

## Exercise 1

- a Chigüm ilbon-e kayo.  
지금 일본에 가요.
- b Ajössi, maekju issöyo?  
아저씨, 맥주 있어요?
- c Mwo sa-rö kage-e kayo?  
뭘 사러 가게에 가요?
- d Yangju-hago ojingö chuseyo.  
양주하고 오징어 주세요.
- e Kürigo anju-do chuseyo.  
그리고 안주도 주세요.
- f Na-do kage-e kayo.  
나도 가게에 가요.
- g Maekju-hago marün anju-hago pap ta issöyo.  
맥주하고 마른 안주하고 밥 다 있어요.  
Or, Marun anju-hago maekju-hago pap ta issöyo.  
마른 안주하고 맥주하고 밥 다 있어요.

## Exercise 2

- a Ppang issöyo.
- b maekju issöyo.
- c sulchip issöyo.
- d kwail issöyo.

## Exercise 3

- 1 Hakkyo-e kayo.
- 2 Kamsa hamnida.
- 3 Annyöng haseyo!
- 4 Ne, chal chinaessöyo.
- 5 Maekju mashi-rö sulchib-e kayo.
- 6 Küröm, maekju-hago soju chuseyo.

## Exercise 4

- a kayo Chigüm hakkyo-e kayo.
- b issöyo Soju issöyo?
- c sayo Mwo sayo?

- d mögöyo Kim sönsaengnim ppang mögöyo.  
 e öpsöyo Ojingö öpsöyo.  
 f haeyo Mwo ha-rö sulchib-e kayo?  
 g anjayo Anjayo!

## Exercise 5

- a Kage-esö mwo sayo? Or  
 Mwo sa-ro kage-e kayo?  
 b Kim sönsaengnim, annyöng haseyo!  
 c Ku-daum-e mwo haeyo?  
 d Chigum shinae-e kayo?  
 e Ödi kayo?  
 f Maekju-hago kwail-hago ppang - ta issöyo!  
 g Pap-do chwuseyo.  
 h Ojingö yögi issöyo. Mashikke tuseyo!  
 i Yangju öpsöyo. Kuröm maekju hana chuseyo.  
 j P'ajön-hago soju-hana chuseyo.

## Exercise 6

- a Ajössi, ojingö chuseyo.  
 b Ajössi, wisk'i chuseyo.  
 c Ajössi, mul chuseyo.

## Exercise 7

- a One soju, one beer and some dry snacks.  
 b Octopus, fruit, western spirits and one beer.

## Exercise 8

- a A: Annyöng haseyo? Ödi kayo?  
 B: Ne. Annyöng haseyo? Kage-e kayo.  
 A: Na-do kage-e kayo. Kach'i kayo.  
 B: Ne. Kach'i kayo. Kürigo sul mashi-rö sulchib-e kayo.  
 b A: Chal chinaessöyo?  
 B: Ne. Chal chinaessöyo.  
 A: (to the waiter) Ajössi, maekju hana hago soju hana chuseyo.  
 Waiter: Ne. Algessöyo.  
 A: Kürigo anju-do chuseyo. Mwo issöyo?  
 Waiter: Kwail hago ojingö hago marün anju issöyo.  
 A: Küröm kwail chuseyo.

## Unit 2

## Exercise 1

- a si, do, e d ga  
 b rö, e, yo e nun, l  
 c un

## Exercise 2

- a O sönsaengnim annyöng haseyo! Hoesa-nun öttaeyo?  
 b Misisu Cho annyöng haseyo! Saöb-un öttaeyo?  
 c Pak sönsaengnim puin annyöng haseyo! Kajog-un öttaeyo?  
 d Taegyü-ssi annyöng haseyo! Hakkyo-nun öttaeyo?  
 e Misu Pak, annyöng haseyo? Köngang-un öttaeyo?

## Exercise 3

- Ne, oraeganman-ieyo. Chal chinaessöyo?  
 Yojüm choayo [=it's good at the moment].  
 Hamushir-e kayo.  
 Chögi-eyo.  
 Kim sönsaengnim manna-rö kayo.

## Exercise 4

- a I-gösh-i ojingö-eyo.  
 b I-gösh-i chaeg-ieyo.  
 c I-gösh-i sagwa-eyo.  
 d I-gösh-i shinmun-ieyo.  
 e I-gösh-i chapchi-eyo.  
 a I-gösh-i ojingö-ga anieyo.  
 b I-gösh-i chaeg-i anieyo.  
 c I-gösh-i sagwa-ga anieyo.  
 d I-gösh-i shinmun-i anieyo.  
 e I-gösh-i chapchi-ga anieyo.

## Exercise 5

- a Excuse me, are you Mr Pak?  
 b No, I'm not Mr Pak. Mr Pak is the Chinese teacher.  
 This is the Chinese department office.  
 a Ah, I'm sorry. Excuse me, but could you tell me where the Korean department is?  
 b It's over there. I'm going to see (meet) a teacher (someone) at the Korean department also.  
 a Let's go together then.

## Exercise 6

- a Miguksaram-iseyo?  
Ne, miguksaram-ieyo.  
Aniyo, miguksaram-i anieyo.
- b I sōnsaengnim-iseyo?  
Ne, I sōnsaengnim-ieyo.  
Aniyo, I sōnsaengnim-i anieyo.
- c Chungguk sōnsaengnim-i aniseyo?  
Ne, chungguk sōnsaengnim-ieyo.  
Anio, chungguk sōnsaengnim-i anieyo.
- d Paek sōnsaengnim adur-i anieyo? (or, aniseyo)  
Ne, Paek sōnsaengnim adur-ieyo.  
Anio, Paek sōnsaengnim adur-i anieyo.
- e Hakkyo sōnsaengnim aniseyo?  
Ne, hakkyo sōnsaengnim-ieyo.  
Anio, hakkyo sōnsaengnim-i anieyo.

## Exercise 7

- a Pak Sangmin-ieyo. A, kuraeyo? Mannasō pangapsumnida.
- b Yojum hakkyo-nun ōttaeyo?
- c Sillye hamnida. Ilbonmal sōnsaengnim-iseyo?
- d Ajōssi, ojingō issōyo? Ojingō ōttaeyo? Choayo.
- e Hankuk hakkwa samushir-i anieyo? Ne. Anieyo.
- f Chō-nun Woo sōnsaengnim-i anieyo. A, kuraeyo?  
Choesong-hamnida.
- g Uri chungguk mal sōnsaengnim-iseyo. Kuraeyo? Malssūm  
mani tūrōssōyo.
- h Ilbon kage-eyo?
- i Na-do hanguk sōnsaengnim manna-rō kayo.
- j Pak sōnsaengnim pun manna-rō wassōyo.
- k Hanguk hakkwa-ga ōdi-eyo?
- l Hakkyo samushir-i ōdi-eyo?

## Exercise 8

- A Annyōng haseyo?  
B A! Annyōng haseyo?  
A Oraeganman-ieyo.  
B Ne. Kuraeyo. Chinccha oraeganman-ieyo.  
A Chal chinaessōyo?  
B Ne. Chal chinaessōyo. Yojūm saōb-un ōttaeyo?  
A Kujō kuraeyo.  
(signalling to his son) Uri adur-ieyo.  
B A! Kuraeyo. Pangapsūmnida.

## Exercise 9

Yūai-nun chunguk hakkwa samushir-i anieyo.  
Chunguk mal sōnsaengnim-i ōpsōyo.

## Unit 3

## Exercise 1

- 1 Pak sōnsaengnim-hago Misisu Kim manna-go ship'ōyo.
- 2 Ppang-hago kwail sa-go ship'ōyo.
- 3 Pulgogi-hago kalbi mōk-ko ship'ōyo.
- 4 Yōngō sōnsaengnim-hago ilbonmal sōnsaengnim kidari-go  
ship'ōyo.
- 5 Maekju-hago wisk'i mashi-go ship'ōyo.
- 6 Ojingō-hago naengmyōn chumun ha-go ship'ōyo.  
second part: Pak sōnsaengnim-ina Misisu Kim manna-go  
ship'ōyo; ppang-ina kwail sa-go ship'ōyo, etc.

## Exercise 2

김 선생님: 오팔이-오구이공

(Kim sōnsaengnim: o-p'al-i-o-gu-i-gong.)

채민: 이구일-육사팔이

(Chaemin: i-gu-il-yuk-sa-p'al-i.)

의사: 육육육-공이삼일

(Uyasa: yuk-yuk-yuk-gong-i-sam-il.)

피티: 공일육이삼-이구육공

(Piti: kong-il-yuk-i-sam-i-gu-yuk-kong.)

박 선생님: 공일오일육팔칠구일공이

(Pak sōnsaengnim: kong-il-o-il-yuk-p'al-ch'il-gu-il-gong-i.)

## Exercise 3

- 1 Hanguk ūmshik choa haseyo?
- 2 Chō-nun Hilton Hotel-uy Sangmin-ieyo.
- 3 Yōlshi-e hakkyo ap'esō mannapshida.
- 4 Onūl chōmshim-e shigan-i issōyo?
- 5 Usōn mul chom chuseyo.
- 6 Maeun kō chal mot (pron: mon) mōgōyo.
- 7 Kalbi samibun-hago naengmyōn tu-kurut chuseyo.

## Exercise 4

- 1 Na-nun Ilbon taesagwan-e mot kayo.
- 2 Chigum chōmshim mōg-uro shiktang-e mot kayo.
- 3 Jaemin-ssi-nun Sangmin-ssi mot kidaryōyo (or, kidariseyo).
- 4 Sangmin-ssi maeun kō mon mōgōyo.

- e (Chungguk taesagwan-ap'esö) Misisu Jang mon mannayo.  
f Paekhwajöm-e mot kayo.

**Exercise 5**

- |   |               |                 |
|---|---------------|-----------------|
| a | kaseyo        | kapshida        |
| b | chumun haseyo | chumun hapshida |
| c | poseyo        | popshida        |
| d | anjüseyo      | anjupshida      |
| e | kidariseyo    | kidaripshida    |
| f | saseyo        | sapshida        |
| g | mannaseyo     | mannapshida     |

E.g. Kim sönsaengnim chamkkan kidariseyo. Yölshi-e hakkyo-e kapshida.

**Exercise 6**

The first sentence says something is good (irrespective of whether or not you personally like it) and the second says that you like it (irrespective of its quality).

**Exercise 7**

- a Chunguk mal-lo malhapshida.  
b Paekhwachöm-e kapshida.  
c Maekju-na wain mashipshida.  
d Mikuk-e kago ship-jiman, mot kayo.  
e Wiski cho-ch'iman, mon masyöyo.  
f Kim sönsaengnim-hant'e chönhwa hago ship-jiman, chalmot kórössöyo.

**Exercise 8**

- a 97      d 867  
b 53      e 34495  
c 207

**Exercise 9**

- a I like spicy food, but I can't eat Korean (well). Or, Although I like spicy food, I can't eat Korean.  
b Excuse me, where is the British embassy?  
c Please sit down over here (at this side). Would you like anything to drink?  
d Do you have (some/free) time? Let's meet later, then.  
e Mr Kim? Just a moment . . . I'm sorry, but there is no such person here. You've misdialled.  
f Is that 863-0542?

**Exercise 10**

Yöl-tu-shi-e hakkyo ap'esö mannapshida.

**Unit 4****Exercise 1**

- a kurön tarun kaseyo  
b kamyön  
c jiman sajön  
d yögisö oshippun  
e chö-nun uy  
f uch'eguk orun unhaeng  
g chongnyu-ga  
h modu turilkkayo  
i ieyo saöp  
j pissan ship'öyo

**Exercise 2**

- a movie  
b what (him)  
c none  
d word  
e bread

**Exercise 3**

- a Yöboseyo. Kim sönsaengnim chom pakkwo chuseyo.  
b Naeil shigan issueyo?  
c Kögi Hankuk taesakwan anieyo?  
d Wuri chip saram-ieyo.  
e Yöngo sajön issöyo?  
f Hanguk umshik choahaseyo?  
g Maekju mashi-go ship'öyo?

**Exercise 4**

- a Han-gwon-e paek won-ssig-ieyo.  
Kurönikka modu sa-baek won-ieyo.  
b Han-jan-e ch'il-paek won-ssig-ieyo.  
Kurönikka modu ch'ön-sa-baek won-ieyo.  
c Han-gae-e i-ch'ön won-ssig-ieyo.  
Kurönikka modu man-i-ch'ön won-ieyo.  
d Han-byöng-e ch'ön-o-baek won-ssig-ieyo.  
Kurönikka modu sa-ch'ön-o-baek won-ieyo.  
e Han-sangja-e yuk-ch'ön won-ssig-ieyo.  
Kurönikka modu man-p'al-ch'ön won-ieyo.

## Exercise 5

- a sŏ uro I
- b I e esŏ
- c ul uro
- d un/i rul
- e nun ul na
- f nun I
- g ul ina
- h ga
- i e ieyo

## Exercise 6

- a Chaek se kwon, chaek yŏdŏl kwon, chaek sumul-du kwon,
- b ir-il, sam-il, yukship-ch'il-il.
- c Han saram, ilgop saram, sŏrŭn-ne saram.
- d Ojingŏ se mari, ojingŏ ahop mari, ojingŏ yŏl-ne mari.
- e Tu pyŏng, yŏl pyŏng.
- f Kae ahop mari, kae han mari.
- g Chŏn won, man won.

## Exercise 7

- a Marun anju an chumun haeyo.
- b O-bun an kŏllyŏyo.
- c Maekju an tuseyo.
- d Sŏnsaengnim an kidariseyo.
- e Chaek an ilgŏyo.

## Exercise 8

- a Sillye-jiman, yŏgi shiktang issŏyo?
- b Naengmyŏn mon mŏgŏyo. Kalbi-do mon mŏgŏyo.
- c Ōlma-eyo? Han chŏpshi-e i-ch'ŏn won . . . ,  
kurŏnikka modu yuk-ch'ŏn won-ieyo.
- d Yŏgisŏ oencchog-uro kaseyo. O-bun kamyŏn, Chongno  
sagŏri-ga issŏyo.
- e Oencchog-uro kaseyo. Ūnhaeng-i orŭncchog-e issŏyo.
- f Cheil ssan ke ōlma-eyo?
- g Kŏrŏsŏ ship-pun cchŭm kŏllyŏyo.
- h Yŏgi Hanguk oehwan ūnhaeng chijŏm-i ōpsŏyo.
- i Ton-ul chom pakku-go ship'ŏyo. O-man won cchum issŏyo.
- j Hanguk-e yŏl-kachi chongnyu-uy kimch'i-ga issŏyo.
- k Hanguk mal sajŏn-ul turilkkayo?
- l Ōttŏn chongnyu-rul turilkkayo?
- l Cheil ssan kŏ chuseyo.

- m Kim sŏnsaengnim-i nappun saram-ieyo?
- n Uch'egug-e kaseyo? Choayo. Annyŏnggi kaseyo.

## Exercise 9

- Clerk Mwol ch'asuseyo?
- Child Uyu issŏyo?
- Clerk Ne, issŏyo.
- Child Uyu tu pyong hago ppang chom chuseyo.
- Clerk Yogi issŏyo.
- Child Ōlmaeyo?
- Clerk Sam ch'ŏn won-ieyo.
- Child Maekju hago kogi hago sagwa hago kimch'i-do issŏyo?
- Clerk Ne, issŏyo.
- Child Ōlmaeyo?
- etc., etc., etc.

## Unit 5

## Exercise 1

- a 아니요. 남대문 시장이 동대문 시장보다 더 재미있어요.
- b 동대문 시장에서 원숭이는 안 팔아요.
- c 이십 만 버스를 타면 남대문 시장에 가요.
- d 네. 남대문 시장에는 안 파는 게 없어요.
- e 바로 길 건너편 정류장에서 타요.

## Exercise 2

- a Aniyŏ. Na-nun mot kayo.
- b Namdaemun shijang-ap'esŏ Kim sŏnsaengnim mannayo.
- c Kurŏm tarun te-e ka-boseyo.
- d Sambaek oship won-ieyo.
- e Hanguk choa ha-jiman hangungmal chaemi ōpsŏyo.

## Exercise 3

- a Kim sonsaengnim(uy) kae-igunyo!
- b O sŏnsaengnim puin-ishigunyo!
- c Ilbon ch'aeg-igunyo!
- d Hanguk oehwan unhaeng-igunyo!
- e Hyŏngjun-igunyo!
- f Chunggungmal sŏnsaengnim-ishigunyo!

## Exercise 4

- a Hanguk ūmshig-i ilbon ūmshik-poda tŏ mashi issŏyo.
- b Yŏgi-nun kŏgi-poda tŏ man(h)ayo.

- c Kich'a-nun bösu-poda tö pallayo.  
 d Kim sönsaengnim-i Pak sönsaengnim-poda chaesu tö man(h)ayo.  
 e Namdaemun shijang-i Tongdaemun shijang-poda pissayo.

**Exercise 6**

- a Wow, it's expensive here! Let's go and try next door (at the next door shop).  
 b They do sell them here, but if you go somewhere else (to a different place) it's cheaper.  
 c Where do you catch a bus for (going to) Seoul city centre?  
 d I haven't had any luck all morning!  
 e Japan is more expensive than Korea. Mind you (however . . .), Korea is expensive too.  
 f There are more English people in Korea than I thought.  
 g I'll cut the price for you. You can take a box for 13,000 won.  
 h Would you like to order?  
 i Since this isn't Korea (since we're not in Korea) there are few places selling kimchi.  
 j You want to know if we've got monkeys? Go and try at Tongdaemun market!

**Exercise 7**

The acceptable sequences are: a, c, d, h.

**Exercise 8**

- a I sajön-i pissa-neyo.  
 b Taegyü-ga o-neyo.  
 c Mwo ha-neyo?  
 d I shinmun-i chöngmal chaemi in-neyo.

**Exercise 9**

- a I saram-i Pak sönsaengnim-igo chö saram Kang sönsaengnim-ieyo.  
 b Ömöni ch'aek ilk-ko aböji t'ellebi-rul pwayo.  
 c Kogi(-do) mon mök-ko sagwa-do mon mögoyo.  
 d Shibil pön bösu-ga Namdaemun shijang-e ka-go iship pön bösu-nun Tongdaemun shijang-e kayo.  
 e Sangjun(-do) bösu t'a-go Myöngt'aek-do bösu t'ayo.

**Exercise 10**

O-ship-ch'il pön bösu-ga hakkyo-e kanun bösu-eyo.  
 Ship-p'al pön bösu-nun shinae-e kayo.

**Unit 6****Exercise 1**

- a ap'ülköeyo  
 b mögülköeyo  
 c öpsülköeyo  
 d ka-giro haessöyo  
 e sa-giro haessöyo  
 f mök-kiro haessöyo  
 g polkka haeyo  
 h halkka haeyo  
 i kalkka haeyo  
 j kalkkayo?  
 k mannalkkayo?  
 l t'alkkayo?

**Exercise 2**

Naeil-un shyop'ing halkka haeyo.  
 Hal ir-i manasö nömu pappayo.  
 Taehak tongch'ang-hago golf hagi-ro haessöyo.  
 Töngsan-ul an choa haeyo.

**Exercise 3**

- A Möri-ga ap'ayo.  
 B Mani ap'ayo?  
 A Kuraeyo. Mani ap'ayo.  
 B Küröm yag-ul sarö yakkug-e kapshida.  
 A Na-nun mot kayo. Tari-do ap'ayo.  
 B Al Yögi twut'ong yag-i issöyo.  
 A Kuraeyo? Komawoyo.

**Exercise 4**

- a nolliji maseyo (or, shikkuröwoyo)  
 b an doegennneyo (or, chaesu ömneyo!)  
 c chönshin-i ta ap'ugwunyo  
 d mworaguyo? (or, shikkuröwoyo)  
 e shikkuröwoyo  
 f ch'akkak haessöyo  
 g küröch'i anayo  
 h anin köt kat'ayo  
 i kökjöng haji maseyo  
 j mworaguyo?

## Exercise 5

- a ppalli t'apshida
- b Shigan-un in-
- c an choayo
- d kach'i kalkkayo?
- e kũ saram puin-i an choayo

## Exercise 6

- a kedaga
- b kũlsseyo
- c kũröch'iman (kuraedo would be even better)
- d kũröch'iman
- e kũrigo

## Exercise 7

- a Kogi-rul choa haji anayo.
- b Chigũm kaji mot haeyo.
- c Chumun haji anayo.
- d I sagwa-ga shingshing haji anayo.
- e Bõsu t'aji mot haeyo.

## Exercise 8

Mõri-ga ap'-ayo. Tari-do ap'-ayo. Umshig-ul mot mög-õyo.

## Unit 7

## Exercise 1

- a Then let's go together.
- b Do you have (free) time today lunchtime?
- c It's really been a long time (since we've seen each other).
- d I'm not the Japanese language teacher.
- e I'm sorry. I made a mistake.
- f Next Monday will perhaps be OK.
- g Since I'm not from Seoul either, I really don't know.
- h So your whole body hurts, then?! Is there anywhere that doesn't hurt?
- i I'd like to change English currency into Chinese.
- j And I'd like to eat some naengmyon as well.
- k Give us some dried snacks and some Korean pancake, please.
- l You can take them for 20,000 won a box.

## Exercise 2

- a se-shi-eyo.
- b Yödöl-shi pan-ieyo. Or, Yödöl-shi sam-ship-pun-ieyo.
- c Yöl-shi sa-ship-o pun-ieyo.
- d Ilgop-shi i-ship pun-ieyo.
- e Yösöt-shi ship pun-ieyo.
- f Yödöl-shi ship-o pun-ieyo.

## Exercise 3

- |   |          |            |                |
|---|----------|------------|----------------|
| a | haeyo,   | ha-go,     | ha-pshida.     |
| b | tadayo,  | tat-ko,    | tat-upshida.   |
| c | p'arayo, | p'al-go    | p'a-pshida.    |
| d | pappayo, | pappu-go,  | pappu-pshida.  |
| e | umjigyo, | umjigi-go, | umjigi-pshida. |

## Exercise 4

- a san-e kapshida.
- b Undongha-rõ san-e kayo.
- c Yu-wol ship-i ir-e kapshida.
- d Yödöl-shi-e mannapshida.
- e Kyohoe ap'-esõ mannapshida.

## Exercise 6

- a Õdi kayo?
- b Kage-e kayo.
- c Mwo sa-rõ kage-e kayo?
- d Ojingõ sa-rõ kayo.

## Exercise 7

- a 박 선생님은 7시 30분에 일어나요.
- b 힐튼 호텔에서 이 선생님의 부인을 만나요.
- c 중국 음식을 먹어요.
- d 영화 보러 극장에 가요.
- e 11시에 자요.

## Exercise 8

- a Chukku-rul choa ha-ji anayo. T'enisu choa haeyo.
- b Aniyõ, maeun kõ chal mon mögõyo. Kalbi mög-ul swu issõyo.
- c Aniyõ, manhi an pwayo. Kuröch'iman radio-rul manhi turõyo.
- d Chal mot pwillõyo. Umag-ul (music) chal turõyo.
- e Aniyõ, chungungmal paeu-ji anayo. Yõngõ paewoyõ.

## Exercise 9

- a Kyohoe-esö yöngguk taesagwan-un möl-ji anayo.
- b I kunch'ö-e hanguk oehwan unhaeng-i öpsöyo. Sangöp unhaeng-un issöyo.
- c Hakkyo-ga ünhaeng yöp'-ieyo.
- d Chegwajöm-i möröyo.
- e Ne. Uch'egug-un taesagwan-poda tö möröyo.
- f Hakkyo-e karyömyön, körsö saship-o pun cchum köllyöyo.
- g Uch'egug-un chegwajöm yöp'-ieyo.

## Exercise 11

- a 나도 영어를 공부하러 학교에 가요.
- b 가게 밖에서 만납시다. 나중에 봐요.
- c 맛있게 드세요. (많이 드세요)
- d 정말 병원에 가야겠어요.
- e 그럼 만오천원만 내세요.
- f 십오분 좀 걸려요.
- g 요즘 사업은 어때요?
- h 제일 잔거 주세요.
- i 요즘 날씨가 좋아요.
- j 한국 대사관에서 박 선생님을 만나러 왔어요.
- k 매운 거 못 먹어요.
- l 우체국 가는 버스가 여기 서요?

## Unit 8

## Exercise 1

- a Hakkyo-e kassöyo.
- b Maekju mani masyössöyo.
- c Yaksog-ul mot chik'yössöyo.
- d Ch'ingu-rul mannassöyo.
- e Yöngghwa-rul po-go ship'össöyo.
- f Tobongsan-e kalkka haessöyo.

## Exercise 2

- a Hae-juseyo.
- b Shyop'ing hae-juseyo.
- c Chömshim sa-juseyo.
- d Kim sönsaengnim-hant'e chönhwa hae-juseyo (or better, hae-jwushigessöyo).
- e Yag-ul sa-juseyo.
- f Shijak hae-juseyo.

## Exercise 3

ch'im-e ... -kiro haessöyo ... kuröch'imhan ... saengyöso ...  
kurönikka ... ha-ryögo ... haessöyo ... chik'yössöyo

## Exercise 4

- a 오늘 학교에 못 가요. 머리가 아프거든요.
- b 일요일 날에 시내에 못 가요. 다른 약속이 있거든요.
- c 오늘 밤 탁구 못 쳐요. 팔이 아프기 시작했거든요.
- d 노래방에 가요? 나는 안 가요. 노래방을 싫어하거든요.
- e 재민씨 못 가요? 그럼 잘 됐네요. 나도 못 가거든요.

## Exercise 5

- a Taehak tongch'anghoe-ga issöyo.
- b Friday, 10th, June.
- c Chipsaram hago shyop'ing haryögo haeyo.
- d Tobongsan-e karyögo haeyo.
- e From Friday, 17th, June
- f Tony hago chömshim-ul mögössöyo.

## Exercise 6

- a Please try the soup! (Have a taste of ...)
- b Pulguksa han bön ka-boseyo.
- c Even though you're busy, go and see.
- d Have you never tried playing table tennis? Then have a go!
- e Jaemin-ssi ajik an wassöyo? Kuröm chogum tö kidaryö-boseyo.

## Exercise 7

- a Pappün ir-i saengyö-sö, mot kayo. (Or, kal su öpsöyo).
- b Chib-e ümshig-i öpsö-sö, shiktang-e kayo.
- c Saöp-i an choa-sö, ton-i öpsöyo.
- d Pakk-e naga-sö kidari-pshida.
- e Sangmin-ssi chib-e ka-sö mwol halkkayo?
- f Sinac-e ka-sö kwail chom sa-o-seyo.

## Exercise 8

- a Yaksog-ul ch'wisoha-ryögo chönhwa haess-öyo. Ir-i saenggyöt-köduyo.
- b Sangmin-ssi-nun t'akku ch'i-rö panggum nagass-öyo.
- c Chöum-enun Kimch'i-ga kurök'e maum-e tul-ji anan-nunde (Or, Kimch'i-rul pyöllo choaha-ji anan-nunde), iksuk haejyöss-öyo.
- d Önje choröphaess-öyo?
- e Sulchip-esö uyönhi manass-öyo.

- f Isangha-neyo! K'urisu-nun pölssö torawass-öyo.  
g Öje pam-e mwo haess-öyo? Solchikhi mal hae-boseyo.

**Exercise 9**

- T'enisu hae bo-ass-öyo?  
Nonggu hae bo-ass-öyo?  
Sinmun ilg-ö bo-ass-öyo?  
Yöngguk umshik mög-ö bo-ass-öyo?

**Unit 9****Exercise 1**

- a P'at'i-e nuga olkka kökjöng-ieyo.  
b Umshig-i mojaralkka(-bwa) kökjöng-ieyo.  
c Kim sönsaengnim-i an oshilkka(-bwa) kökjöng-ieyo.  
d Yöja ch'ingu-ga tangshin-ul an choahalkka(-bwa) kökjöng-ieyo.  
e Pi-ga olkka(-bwa) kökjöng-ieyo.

**Exercise 2**

김선생님 대학교 선생님이세요. 런던 대학교에서 한국말을 가르치시고 일본말도 가르치세요. 매일 아침 공원에 가서 산책하세요. 개하고 같이 가세요. 공원은 아주 좋아요. 김선생님의 개는 고기를 잘 먹어요. 작년부터 부인도 가끔 산책하시기 시작하셨어요. 부인도 가시면 둘이 식당에 가서 커피 한잔 마시세요.

**Exercise 3**

- a Yag-ul sa-yagessöyo.  
b Chwiso ha-ryögo chönhwa hae-yagessöyo.  
c Sajön-ul sa-yagessöyo.  
d Tora-ga-yagessöyo.  
e Shinmun-ul pwa-yagessöyo.

**Exercise 4**

- a Muös-ul salkka kyölchöng hae-yagessöyo.  
b Muös-ul ibulkka kyölchöng hae-yagessöyo.  
c Ödi anjulkka kyölchöng hae-yagessöyo.  
d Muös-ul chumun halkka kyölchöng hae-yagessöyo.  
e Chumar-e ödi kalkka kyölchöng hae-yagessöyo.

**Exercise 5**

- a Na-do o-l su issöyo?  
b I kö mög-ul su issöyo?

- c Na-rul naeil manna-l su issöyo?  
d Ilbonmar-ul mal ha-l su öpsöyo.  
e Ton-i öps-ösö sa-l su öpsöyo.  
f Yögi chuch'a ha'l su öpsöyo.

**Exercise 6**

- a Öje sat-janhayo.  
b Aniyö, pölssö kyörhon haet-janhayo!  
c Pölssö haet-janhayo.  
d Ilkki shirö ha-janhayo.  
e Wuri chipsaram-ieyo. Öje mannat-janhayo.

**Exercise 7**

- A Naeir-i oppa saengir-ieyo.  
Mwol sa-dürilkka chöng haeyagessöyo.  
B Ch'öngbaji-rul sa-dürilkkayo?  
A Ch'öngbaji-nun pölssö yöl pöl-ina kat-ko issöyo.  
B Kürömyön chaeg-un öttölkayo?  
A Oppa-nun chaeg-ul siröhaeyo.  
B Kuröm mannyönp'ir-unyo?  
A Mannyönp'il-do tö isang p'iryö öpsöyo.  
B Kuröm CD-nun?  
A Changnyön-e sa juöt-janayo.

**Unit 10****Exercise 1**

- a Naeil shigan issöyo?  
b Yönggug-esö wan-nündeyo.  
c Öje chönhwa haen-nündeyo.  
d kabang-ul nok'o kassöyo.  
e Sajön-ul sa-go ship'-undeyo.  
f Kim sönsaengnim ödi kasyössöyo?

**Exercise 2**

- a Pi-ga o-nun köt kat'ayo.  
b Ku saram-un Pak sönsaengnim-i-n köt kat'ayo.  
c Toksö-rul shirö ha-nun köt kat'ayo.  
d Jaemin-ssi Tongdaemun shijang-e ka-n köt kat'ayo.  
e Kim sönsaengnim naeil oshi-nun köt kat'ayo.  
f Kabang-ul yögi noh-un köt kat'ayo.

**Exercise 3**

Aju k'ugo kömjöng saeg-igo kajug-uro madurössyo.

## Exercise 4

- Umshig-ul mög-ul ttae iyagi (mal) ha-ji maseyo.
- Chuch'a ha-l ttae choshim haseyo.
- Shinae-e ka-l ttae na-hant'e chönhwa hae-juseyo.
- Yöngghwa-ga kunna-l ttae shiktang-e kapshida.
- Toch'ak haess-ul ttae maekju hana mashyössöyo.
- Naga-l ttae kach'i kapshida.

## Exercise 5

- Anyhow, what have you decided to do now?
- Didn't you see my girlfriend? If you see her (please) give me a call.
- If you get a bit better don't take the medicine any more.
- When will you graduate? What plans have you got after that?
- Are these papers important? Of course they're important! It's my driving licence, stupid!
- When we have a date, we often go to see a movie.

## Exercise 6

- K'un shilsu-rul hasyössöyo.
- Pam nutke toshi-e kamyön wihömhaeyo.
- Ku sajön chom poyö jushigessöyo?  
Igö ödi-sö sashyössöyo?
- Musun munje-ga innayo?  
Ne. Nae yag-ul iröböri-n köt kat'ayo.
- Yojum st'uresu-rul nömu mani pada-sö,  
pam-e cham-ul chal su öpsöyo.
- Kabang-ul iröböri-syössöyo? Mwo-ga turö innayo?
- Nae saenggag-ul choaha-ji anch'anayo.
- Kuraesö mwol hashyössöyo?

## Exercise 7

Take two tablets every three hours while it's very bad.  
When it gets a bit better, then take one tablet before meal  
only at lunchtime.

## Unit 11

## Exercise 1

- 이 옷이 정말 좋다.
- 비가 온다.
- 뭘 하니?

- 밥을 먹고 있다.
- 리질하고 있니?
- 조급 더 기다리면 버스가 올 거다.
- 밥 먹는다.
- 어제 밤 어디 잤니?
- 조심했니?

## Exercise 2

- Myön-uro mandün ot.
- Oje uri-ga mashin maekju.
- Kim sönsaengni-i il-ko innün chaek.
- Ku saram-i ip-ko innün shyöch'u.
- Changnyön-e uri-ga pon yöngghwa.
- Nae-ga shiröha-nün ümshik.

## Exercise 3

- Choa poyö-do, an choayo.
- Pissa-do, mash-i issöyo.
- Pi-ga wa-do, naga-go ship'öyo.
- Ku saram-ul choaha-ji ana-do, manna-yagessöyo.
- Palgun saeg-ira-do, öulli-ji anayo.
- Möri-ga ap'a-do, noraebang-e kalkka haeyo.

## Exercise 4

- Musun yöngghwa-rul polkkayo?
- \_\_\_\_\_rul popshida.
- Kü-gön uri-ga changnyön-e pon yöngghwa-janayo.  
\_\_\_\_\_rul popshida.
- Kü-gön shigan-i nömu nujoyo.
- Yöldu-shi-ga nömu nujöyo? Musun mar-ieyo?!
- Küraedo ku yöngghwa-nun chöngmal chaemi ömnun köt  
kat'ayo.
- Musun yöngghwa-rul polkka?
- \_\_\_\_\_rul poja.
- Kü-gön uri-ga changnyön-e pon yöngghwa-jana.  
\_\_\_\_\_rul poja.
- Kü-gön shigan-i nömu nujo.
- Yöldu-shi-ga nömu nujo? Musun mar-ia?!
- Küraedo ku yöngghwa-nun chöngmal chaemi ömnun köt kat'a.

## Exercise 5

- Hangugmar-ul chal hanun saram-i wayo.
- Oje san os-ul choaha-ji anayo.
- Kü saram-un möshinün saram-ieyo.

- d Chir-i tō choa-do ne bae-na pissayo.  
 e Tangshin-i ip-go innun os-ul ibō pol su issōyo?  
 f Mworaguyo?  
 g Sul mashi-ji anass-ōdo, pam-e unjōnhal ttae choshimhaseyo.  
 h Pisut han kō issōyo?

## Unit 12

### Exercise 1

- a Haksaeng-i myōnmyōng-imnikka?  
 b Musun shisōl-dur-i issumnikka?  
 c Hangungmal hago chunggungmar-ul kongbu hal su issumnikka?  
 d Myōnmyōng-i hangungmar-ul kongbu hamnikka?  
 e Chōmshimshigan-un myō-shi-imnikka?  
 f Chōmshimshigan-e pap mōg-urō chip-e ka-do toemnikka?

### Exercise 2

- a Pin pang issōyo?  
 b Ne. Ch'imdae-bang chuseyo.  
 c Ilgop-sal hago tasōt-sar-ieyo.  
 d Sam-il tongan-iyo.  
 e Anio. Chikchōp shiktang-e kasō mōkkessōyo.

### Exercise 3

- a Muōs-ul hashyōssumnikka?  
 b Chimdaebang hana chushipshio.  
 c Chō saram-un Kim sōnsaengnim-ishimnikka?  
 d Na-nun paekhwajōm-e kamnida.  
 e Radio-rul tur-umyōnsō ch'aeg-ul ilksumnida.

### Exercise 4

- a If you book for more than a week, we'll give you a 10% discount.  
 b To be (perfectly) honest, I hate people like that.  
 c He said that he had (or, he has) already eaten breakfast.  
 d A room with a floor mattress is 20,000 won per day.  
 e It will be okay if you get up at 7 o'clock.  
 f We can't give you a refund (of the fare).  
 g Two rooms with (western) beds, please.  
 h If you've got something to say (comments to make) about this hotel, please speak to the manager.

### Exercise 5

- a I hot'er-e sauna shisōr-i issumnikka?  
 b Ach'im shiksa-rul paedal hae-jumnikka?  
 c I hot'er-e suyōngjang-i issumnikka?

### Exercise 6

- a Myōch'il tongan yeyak hasyōssumnikka?  
 b Chukshi unhaengwon-hant'e yaegi haessumnida.  
 c I hot'er-e musun shisōl-dur-i issumnikka?  
 d Nae ch'a-e munje-ga manun kōt kat'-ayo.  
 e Nae adur-un aji-kkaji irōna-ji anassōyo.  
 f Uri-nun chukshi ba-e kasō sul mashil kōeyo.  
 g Kim sōnsaengnim-un pulch'injōl han saram-ieyo.  
 h Sam-il tongan mungnun ke chok'essōyo.

## Unit 13

### Exercise 1

- a There are not many seats left.  
 b You can't eat something different.  
 c Would you like a return ticket?  
 d Mountain climbing is really awful. (I really hate it...)  
 e It looks like I'll have to go, then.  
 f We were just going to have (*intending to have*) a game of baseball.  
 g Is there a train going to Mokp'o this afternoon?  
 h That's a decent idea (surprise!).

### Exercise 2

- a Chōmshim mōk-ki chōn-e.  
 Chōmshim mōg-un taum-e.  
 b Omōni-hant'e chōnhwa ha-gi chōn-e.  
 Omōni-hant'e chōnhwa ha-n taum-e.  
 c Nol-gi chōn-e.  
 No-n taum-e.  
 d Shinmum-ul ilk-ki chōn-e.  
 Shinmun-ul ilk-un taum-e.

### Exercise 3

- a 20.00 (10.00 p.m.)  
 b 8.00  
 c 11.00  
 d No, there isn't.  
 e Yes, there is.

## Exercise 4

- a Chib-e toraga-l su pakk-e öpsöyo.  
 b Ton-ul nae-l su pakk-e öpsöyo.  
 c Ach'im yösö shi-e iröna-l su pakk-e öpsöyo.

## Exercise 5

- a Na-nun kogi malgo kwail mök-ko ship'-öyo.  
 b Na-nun swuyöng malgo nonggu ha-go ship'-öyo.  
 c Na-nun shinmun malgo sosöl chaek ilk-ko ship'-öyo.  
 d Na-nun norae ha-ji malgo umak tut-ko ship'-öyo.

## Exercise 6

- a Ch'ulbal shigan chön-e (or, Ch'ulbal ha-gi chön-e), mög-ul kö-rul saseyo.  
 b Pumonim-hant'e yaegi halkkayo?  
 c Na-do ka-go ship-chiman, nömu möryo.  
 d Se chari-rul hamkke yeyak hal su issöyo?  
 e Söul malgo Inch'on-e kapshida.  
 f Il kkunna-n daum-e mwol halkkayo?  
 g Önje tora-o-shigessöyo?  
 h Saengsönhoe choaha-seyo?

## Unit 14

## Exercise 1

- a Since Mum likes watching movies, she can watch the video instead of Dad.  
 b It's probably due to stress.  
 c In fact (actually) there were some very important papers inside.  
 d (My) jeans have worn out (become unusable).  
 e My wife will perhaps know.  
 f Tomorrow evening after work I'm planning to go to the mountains.  
 g You never like my ideas (or, opinions).  
 h The door to our room doesn't even open.  
 i Could you tell me where the library is, please (lit., could you teach me . . .).  
 j Did you drink so much alcohol (as that)?  
 k It's a very popular style nowadays.  
 l Show me your driver's licence please.

## Exercise 2

- a Yagu hae boshyössöyo?  
 Ne. Hae bwassöyo. Sashir-un öje hae bwassöyo.  
 b Suyöng hae boshyössöyo?  
 Ne. Hae bwassöyo. Sashir-un öje hae bwassöyo.  
 c T'aku hae boshyössöyo?  
 Ne. Hae bwassöyo. Sashir-un öje hae bwassöyo.  
 d Ch'um ch'wo boshyössöyo?  
 Ne. Hae bwassöyo. Sashir-un öje hae bwassöyo.

## Exercise 3

- a Shillye-jiman yögi kurön saram öpsöyo.  
 b Aniyö, shirö hamnida.  
 c Deit'u ha-l ttae-nun pot'ong nait'u-na shiktang-e kayo. (nightclub)  
 d Pyöllo cho-ch'i an-un kot kat'ayo.  
 e Aniyö, yaksog-ul chal chik'yöyo.

## Exercise 4

- a Chöngmallo p'yoyip'an-ul mot pwassöyo.  
 b Ch'ongbaji hago kach'i ibul swu issöyo.  
 c Yaksog-ul ch'wiso ha-ryögo chönhwa haessöyo.  
 d Pang-e chönhwa hago t'erebi-ka issöyo?  
 e Söbisu-ga önmang-ieyo.  
 f Changnyön-e ku saram-hant'e yangmar-ul sa juössöyo.  
 g Chom chag-un köt kat'ayo.  
 h Kurön chul arassöyo.  
 i Inch'on-e kasö saengsönhoe-rul mök-ko ship'-öyo.  
 j Cha-ga öttök'e saenggyössöyo?  
 k P'yönji han-jang ssö jushigessöyo?  
 l Möri-ga nömu ap'asö cham-ul mot chayö.

## Exercise 5

Name:	Irüm-i mwo-eyo?
Age:	Myöt-sar-ieyo?
Occupation:	Chigöb-i mwo-eyo?
Father's name:	Aböji irum-i mwo-eyo?
How met:	Öttök'e manness-öyo?
What do together:	Hamkke (Kach'i) mwol haeyo?
Likes/dislikes:	Mwol choahaeyo?
	Mwol siröhaeyo?

## Exercise 6

- a If you do it wrong (*if you don't do it properly*) it's very dangerous.  
 b Do you have a message for Poktong?  
 c We deliver it to your room (lit., the guest's room).  
 d I was here yesterday. I left my jumper.  
 e The girl said that it was good quality.  
 f I've got a new girlfriend and it seems like we're out every day.  
 g Don't talk; just listen.  
 h Take one tablet twice a day after meals.  
 i Look at this! The quality's pretty bad.  
 j You wouldn't know where he/she has gone, would you?  
 k How would a new television be?  
 l A similar thing is about twice as cheap at Namdaemun.

## Exercise 7

Anio, pappun ir-i issöyo. Waeyo?  
 Wolyoir-un öttaeyo?  
 Kuraeyo? P'at'i-ga issöyo?  
 Aböji-hant'e mwol sa-durilkköeyo?  
 Hwayoir-un öttaeyo? Ku ttae-nun shigan issöyo?  
 Cho-un saenggag-ieyo.

## Exercise 8

Informal style:

- A Naeil chönyöög-e shigan-i issö?  
 You Ani, pappun ir-i issö. Wae?  
 A Kunyang naga-go ship'önnunde.  
 You Wolyoir-un öttae?  
 A Wolyoil-lar-un aböji saengshin-ya.  
 You Kurae? P'at'i-ga issö?  
 A Ani. Kunyang shiktang-e kasö kach'i chönyök hanun kö-ya.  
 You Aböji-hant'e mwol sa-durilkköya?  
 A Yangmal. Hangsang yangmal sa.  
 You Hwayoir-un öttae? Ku ttae-nun shigan issö?  
 A Ung, choa. Naitu kalkka?  
 You Cho-un saenggag-ya.

Plain style:

- A Naeil chönyöög-e shigan-i iss-ni?  
 You Ani, pappun ir-i iss-ta. Wae?  
 A Kunyang naga-go ship'önnunde.  
 You Wolyoir-un öttö-ni?

Wolyoil-lar-un aböji saengshin-ida.

Kurae? P'at'i-ga iss-ni?

Anida. Kunyang shiktang-e kasö kach'i chönyök hanun kö-da.

Aboji-hant'e mwol sa-durilkkö-ni?

Yangmal. Hangsang yangmal sa-nda.

Hwayoir-un öttö-ni? Ku ttae-nun shigan iss-ni?

Ung, cho-t'a. Naitu kalkka?

Cho-un saenggag-ida.

## Exercise 9

Chigüm ödi kashimnikka?

Chumun haessumnikka?

Ilgop shi-e irönamnida.

Ppalli hae-jushipshio.

Chö saram-un pulch'inchöl han saram-imnida.

## Exercise 10

Ach'im igop-shi-e irönassöyo.

Ach'im-ul mög-un daum-e ahop-shi-e kyohoe-e kassöyo.

Yöl-du-shi-e yöja ch'ingu hago kach'i chömshim-ul mögössöyo.

Se-shi-e kich'a-ul t'ago Pusan-e kassöyo.

Ilgop-shi-e yönghwa-rul pwassöyo.

## Exercise 11

Ku ttae-but'ö ku yöja-rul chaju manna-gi shijak haessöyo.

Him-i öpsö-do nolla-ji maseyo.

I-bon-e-nun tangshin-i towa jwuseyo.

Piut hae poyö-do pisut ha-ji anayo.

Chigüm-but'ö tö choshim haseyo.

Chigüm (chukshi) shiktang-e kasö pap mög-ul köeyo.

Kuröm chal toenneyo. Annyonghi keseyo.

Onul chönyöög-un nae-ga nae-lkkeyo.

Uri paekhwajöm-ul myö-shi-e ttöna-shyössöyo?

Shilsu-ga palsaeng hamnita.

tangshin-ul sogae halkkayo?

thö boshigessöyo?

aa!	ah!
ach'im	morning; breakfast (abbreviated form)
ach'im ha-	have breakfast
ach'imshiksa	breakfast
adul	son
agassi	waitress!, lit. = girl, unmarried woman
ajik	yet, still
ajössi	waiter!
aju	very
al	tablet
algesssümnida	I understand; OK, right, fine (formally)
ama	perhaps, probably
an	not (used to make verbs negative)
anj-	sit
an p'anün ke	something which is not sold, not available
anieyo	is not (opposite of -(i)eyo, negative copula)
aniyo	no
anj-	sit (stem)
anju	snacks or side dishes for drinks
annyonghi kaseyo	goodbye (to someone who is leaving)
annyonghi kyeseyo	goodbye (to someone who is staying)
ap'esö	in front of
ap'ayo	hurts (polite style)
ap'ü-	hurts (stem)

ap'ün	hurting, painful (adjective)
ara-döl-	understand (lit verb like tul-, listen; ara-duroyo, ara-dut-ko etc.)
bae	double, (two) times
büu	bus
chae	number (time)
chok	side
ch'a	car (short form)
ch'a-	look for
ch'a po-	to have a look, to look for
ch'am	very
ch'anggu	window, cashier window
ch'i	to play (tennis, table tennis etc.)
ch'imdae	bed
ch'imdaebang	room with bed
ch'ongbaji	blue jeans
ch'ongso ha-	clean, clean up
ch'örom	like
ch'onsaram	country bumpkin, yokel
ch'öüm	at first
ch'ulbal	departure
ch'ulbal ha-	depart
cha	sleep
chadongch'a	car
chaejangnyön	the year before last year
chaemi iss-	is interesting, is fun
chaeryo	stuff, (raw) material
chaesu	luck
chaesu öps-	have no luck, have bad luck
chaju	often, frequently
chal	good, well (adverb)
chalmot	wrongly, mis-
cham	sleep (noun)
chamba	jumper
chamkkan	a little (while)
chamkkan kidariseyo	please wait a moment
chan	cup
changnyön	last year
chapchi	magazine
chapswo po-	try eating (honorific form)
chapsushi-	eat honorific equivalent of mok-

chari  
che  
che saenggag-enun  
cheil  
chegwajöm  
chibaein  
chigüm  
chigwon  
chiha  
chiha shiktang  
chijöm  
chikchöp  
chikhaeng

chil  
chilsaeg-i  
chinccha  
chip  
chipsaram  
chö  
chö-

cho-ch'i anh-  
cho-un saenggag-ineyo  
chö...  
choa ha-  
choayo  
choesong ha-jiman  
choesong hamnida

chögi  
chögö-do  
chogum  
chogum chön  
choh-  
chohüy  
chom  
chömshim  
chön  
chön ha-  
chön ha-l mal

chön-e

seat  
my (humble form)  
in my opinion  
the most  
bakery  
manager (of hotel or facility)  
now  
employee  
basement  
basement restaurant  
branch  
direct(ly)  
fast train, express train (also  
called saemaul(ho))  
quality  
(really) hate  
really  
house  
wife  
me  
that one (a long way away, old  
English 'yon')  
is not good (from choh-)  
that's a good idea  
er..., hmm...  
like (stem)  
good, fine, OK (polite style)  
I'm sorry, but; excuse me,  
but...  
I'm sorry; I apologize; excuse  
me  
(over) there  
at least  
a little, a bit  
a little while ago  
good (stem)  
humble form of wuri 'our, my'  
a little; please  
lunch  
before  
communicate  
something to say/pass on/  
communicate  
previously

chöng ha-  
chöngdo  
chöngi myöndogi  
chöngmal  
chöngno

chöngnyu  
chöngnyujang  
chöngöpwon  
chöngwangp'an  
chönhwa  
chönhwa ha-  
chönsin  
chönyök  
chörön  
chöröp ha-  
chörum  
chöshim ha-  
chü-  
chüch'a han  
chüch'a ha-  
chükshi  
chumushi-

chumun ha-  
chungguk  
chungyo ha-  
chungyo han

chuseyo

chwahoejön  
chwahoejön han taum-e  
chwasök  
chwisö ha-

deit'u ha-  
dijain  
do

dongan  
du

decide  
extent, about (approximately)  
electric shaver  
really  
Chongno (one of the main  
streets in Seoul, north of the  
Han river)  
type, sort, kind  
bus stop  
waiter, assistant  
electronic noticeboard  
telephone  
telephone (verb stem)  
the whole body  
evening  
oh dear!, o my!  
to graduate  
sleepiness, drowsiness  
be careful, be cautious  
give (stem)  
parked  
to park  
immediately  
sleep (honorific equivalent of  
cha-)  
order (stem)  
China  
be important  
important (modifier form, like  
an adjective)  
please give (polite request  
form)  
left turn  
after doing a left turn  
seating, places  
cancel

to date  
design  
too, also (particle, attaches to  
nouns)  
during  
two (pure Korean number)

-e	at (a certain time)
-e	each, per
-e	to (preposition, attaches to nouns)
-e	about, concerning
-e taehaesö	about, concerning
-ege	to
ei	hey, come off it!
-esö	location particle (place in which something happens); from
ha-	do (verb stem)
ha-l mal	something to say
ha-rö	in order to do
haessöyo	did (past tense form of ha- do)
haeyo	do (stem plus polite ending -yo, irregular form)
-hago	and
hakkwa	department (of college/ university)
hakkyo	school
halmöni	grandma
hamkke	together
han	one (pure Korean, when used with a counter or measure word)
han (number/time) cchüm	about, around, approximately
-hant'e	to, for (a person)
han-yöng	Korean-English
hana	one
hangsang	always
hangungmal	Korean language
hanguk	Korea(n) (pronounced <i>hanguk</i> )
hanja	Chinese characters
hanshiktang	Korean restaurant (serving Korean food)
-hant'e	to (a person)
haraböji	grandfather
harin	discount
harin ha-	give a discount
haru	one day (duration)
haru-e	per day
him	strength, energy
hoe	raw meat
hoesa	company

hokshi	maybe, perhaps, possibly
hom	platform
honja	alone, on one's own
hot'el	hotel
hupyönsök	smoker (compartment)
hwagin ha-	check, confirm
hwaldongjö-gin	modifier form of the below (like an adjective)
hwaldongjök	casual, active
hwanpul ha-	reimburse
hwolsshin	by far, far and away
hu	after
hullyung ha-	is excellent, great
Hyöndae chadongch'a	Hyundai car (company)

l	two
l-	this one (+ noun), this noun
l-bön	this time
il	matter, business, work
il ha-	work (verb stem)
il kkünnago	after finishing work
ilbang t'onghaeng	one way
ilbang t'onghaengno	one-way street
ilbon	Japan
ilbonmal	Japanese language
ilchik	early
ilk-	read
ilyoil	Sunday
ilyoillal	Sunday (longer form)
Inch'ön	Korean port near Seoul
-inbun	portion
ipku	entrance
-irang	with (-rang after vowel)
iröböri-	lose
irök'e	like this
irüm	name
isang	more than
isang ha-	is strange, bizarre
isang ha-ne(yo)	(it is) strange!
iss-	1 exist, there is/lare (stem)
	2 have (stem)
issöyo	as above, polite style
issushi-	have (honorific of iss- in its meaning of possession)

ittaga	<i>in a little while</i>
-iyo	(used to check information, 'you mean?')
-ji maseyo	<i>please don't</i>
k'adu	<i>a card</i>
k'ün	<i>big</i>
ka-	<i>go (verb stem)</i>
kabang	<i>a briefcase, a bag</i>
kabo-	<i>go and see, visit (a place)</i>
kach'i	<i>together</i>
kage	<i>shop</i>
kagyök	<i>price</i>
kaji	<i>kind, example (counter for the noun chongnyu)</i>
kajok	<i>family</i>
kajuk	<i>leather</i>
kajyöga-	<i>take</i>
kal-	<i>change (a towel, a platform, clothes etc.)</i>
kalbi	<i>marinated and fried meat, usually beef or pork</i>
kanün	<i>going to, bound for</i>
kara-ip-	<i>change clothes</i>
kara-t'a-	<i>change (platform, trains etc.)</i>
karüch'i-	<i>teach</i>
kat'-	<i>be the same, be similar; seem like</i>
katko kyeshi-	<i>have, possess (for honorific person; polite style = katko kyeseyo)</i>
kat'ün	<i>same</i>
kat'ün köt	<i>(a) similar thing, something similar</i>
kayo	<i>go (stem plus polite ending -yo)</i>
kedaga	<i>on top of that</i>
kidari-	<i>wait</i>
kil	<i>road, route</i>
-ki-man haseyo	<i>just do (verb)</i>
kimch'i	<i>classic Korean side dish, marinated cabbage</i>
kiök	<i>memory</i>

-kiro haessöyo

-kkaji

kkakka-ju-

kkoebyöng-ul purijiyo

kkok

kkok

kkunna-

kkunnae-

kkwoebyöng

kö

-ko

-ko naso

-ködunyo

kögi

kojang na-

kojang nassöyo

kökchöng ha-ji maseyo

kökjöng

kökjöng ha-

kölli-

köllyöyo

kolmog

komapsumnida

kömjöng

kön

köngang

könnöp'yön

körösö

körössöyo

kos

köuy

kü-

kü-daum-e

kü-gön

kü-göt poragu!

küjö kuraeyo

kuk

decided to

until

cut the price (for someone's benefit)

you're making it up! (feigning an illness)

exactly, certainly, precisely without fail, definitely

finish

finish (verb stem, to finish something)

a feigned illness

thing, object, fact (abbreviation of kot, spelt kos)

and (to join clauses)

after (added to verb stems)

(see page 110)

over there (nearer than chogi)

break down

be broken down

don't worry! (colloquial form: kokjong maseyo)

worry, concern

be worried

takes (time duration)

it takes (polite style)

alley, small road

thank you

black

thing, object (abbrev of kot + topic particle)

health

opposite side

on foot

dialled (past tense of kol-, irreg. verb)

place

nearly, almost

that one (nearer than cho)

after that

that thing (topic)

you see!

so-so

soup

kŭlsseyo	<i>I dunno, I'm not sure, who knows?</i>
kŭmyōnsōk	<i>no smoking compartment</i>
kŭnch'ō	<i>district, area, vicinity</i>
kŭnsa ha-	<i>look super, look good</i>
kŭnyang	<i>simply, just</i>
kŭraedo	<i>however, nevertheless, but still</i>
kŭraesōyo?	<i>so what?</i>
kŭraeyo (?)	<i>really (?), is it / it is so (?)</i>
kŭrigo	<i>and (also) (used to begin a sentence)</i>
kŭrigo nasō	<i>after that</i>
kŭrōhch'i anhayo	<i>of course not</i>
kŭrōk'e	<i>like that</i>
kŭrōm	<i>then, in that case</i>
kŭrōn	<i>such a, that (particular)</i>
kŭrōn p'yōn-ieyo.	<i>(we) tend to be so / do so (it's usually like that, etc.)</i>
kŭrōnikka	<i>therefore, because of that</i>
kŭrūt	<i>dish</i>
kushik	<i>old style, old fashioned</i>
kwail	<i>fruit</i>
kwaro	<i>overwork</i>
kwallyōn	<i>relation, link</i>
kwon	<i>volume (measure word)</i>
kyehoek	<i>plan(s)</i>
kyeshi-	<i>exist (honorific of iss- in its existential there is/are meaning)</i>
kyohoe	<i>church</i>
kyōljōng ha-	<i>decide</i>
kyōngch'al	<i>policeman</i>
kyōngch'alsō	<i>police station</i>
kyōngu	<i>circumstance, situation</i>
kyōu	<i>only</i>
mach'angaji-ieyo	<i>be the same, be identical</i>
-mada	<i>each, every</i>
maeil	<i>everyday</i>
maekju	<i>beer</i>
maeun	<i>spicy</i>
maj-	<i>to fit well (maj + nunda = man-nunda)</i>
mal	<i>language</i>
mal ha-	<i>speak, say</i>

mal han daero  
malssŭm  
malssŭm ha-

malssŭm haseyo

malssŭm mani turōssōyo

man

-man

man(h)-

man(h)i

man-ch'i anasō

man-e

manbyōngt'ongch'iyak

mandul-

mandurōssōyo

manna-

mannasō pangapsumnida

marun anju

mash-i ōps-

mashi-

mashi-ōmnunde-do mar-ieyo

maum

maum-e (kkok) turōyo

maum-e tul-ji anayo

miguk

miniba

modu

mollayo

mom

mōri

mōrōyo

morŭ-

morŭgessōyo

mōshiss-

as (I) said, like (I) said  
words, speech

speak, say (of someone  
honorific, often in phrase  
malssŭm haseyo!)

please tell me, please say it  
(I'm listening!) (honorific)  
I've heard a lot about you  
10,000

only

is many (h is not pronounced,  
polite style = manayo)

much, many, a lot

since there aren't many  
(written manh-ji anhaso)

within, in only (2 or 3 months)  
cure-all medicine, miracle cure

make (l- irregular verb like  
p'al, nol- etc.)

be made of (past tense of  
mandul-, l- irregular verb)

meet (stem)

pleased to meet you

dried snacks

be tasteless, be unpleasant (to eat)  
drink

I'm saying (stress) that even  
the food tasted bad

mind, heart

I (really) like it

I don't like (her) (maum-e an  
turoyo)

America

mini-bar

all together, everything,

everyone

I don't know

body

head

is far (polite style, irregular  
stem)

not know (stem)

I don't know

be stylish, be handsome

mot	cannot (nb mot + m- = mon m-)
mot ara-düt-ket-tago ha-	say that (one) couldn't understand
mök-	eat
muk-	stay, lodge, spend the night
mul	water
mul naengmyön	thin noodles in cold soup, spicy and refreshing!
mulgön	goods
mun	door
munje	problem
muös	what (full form of mwo)
murö-bo-	ask
musün	what (kind of), what, which
muttuktuk ha-	be stubborn, be blunt
mwo	what?
mwol	what (object form)
-myön	if
myön	cotton
myöndo(-rul) ha-	shave
myönhöcchung	(driving) licence
-myönsö	while (see p. 172)
myöt (myoch')	what (number)?
myöt shi	what time
na	I/me
-na	approximately, about; or
naaji-	get better
nae	my
nae-	pay
naeil	tomorrow
naengjanggo	refrigerator
naengmyön	thin noodles with vegetables
naga-	go out
nalssi	weather
nam-	be left (over), remain
Namdaemun	Great South Gate (in Seoul), Namdaemun
namja ch'ingu	boyfriend
namp'yön	husband
nao-	come out
ne	yes
nö(h)-	put down, leave
nolla-	to be surprised, be shocked

nolli-  
nolli-ji maseyo

nömu  
nongdam  
nongdam ha-  
noraie  
noraebang  
noraeha-  
noryök ha-  
nükki-  
nütke  
nuga  
nugu  
nun

o-  
öcchaettun  
ödi  
ödi kannunji aseyo?

ödinga  
oehwan  
oehwan unhaeng  
oen  
ohiryö  
öi

öje-do mach'angaji-yötgoyo

öjingö  
ölma  
ölma nam-ji anassumnida  
ölma-dongan  
ölma-dongan mwug-  
ushigessöyo?

ömmu  
ömnun köt kat'unde

öndolbang  
öngmang  
önje  
önu  
önül

make fun of  
don't joke, don't kid me, don't  
tease  
too (much)  
joke (noun)  
jokes (verb)  
a song  
'karaoke' singing room  
sing  
make effort, strive  
to feel  
late  
who? (subject form)  
who?  
an eye

come (stem)  
anyway  
where?  
do you know where (she) has  
gone?  
somewhere or other  
exchange  
Korea Exchange Bank  
left  
rather, on the contrary  
hey! (used to call close friends  
and colleagues)  
it was exactly the same  
yesterday as well  
squid  
how much  
there are only a few spaces left  
how long  
how long will you be staying?  
business, service  
it doesn't look as though there  
is anything / are any  
room with bed on floor  
rubbish, awful, appalling  
when  
which one  
today

orac	long
oraeganman-ieyo	long time no see!
orakshil	amusements (electronic games, etc.)
orün	right
ösö oseyo	welcome!
öttaeyo?	how is it?
öttölk kayo?	how would it be?
öttök'e	how?
öttök'e saenggyössöyo?	what does it look like?
öttön	certain, some (as a question word = which?)
öulli-	suit (a person)
p'iryö ha-	is needed (p'iryö ha- also exists but is less common)
p'oham doeö-iss-	be included
p'yöndo	single (ticket, way)
p'yönji	letter
p'ajön	Korean-style pancake
p'aljiman	they sell, but . . .
p'anün ke	item for sale, items sold
p'arayo	sell (polite style form, stem is irregular)
p'at'i	party
p'iro	fatigue, weariness
p'iryö iss-	is necessary, is needed
p'iryö öps-	is not necessary, is not needed, has no need of
p'ösent'u	per cent
p'yo	ticket
p'yoji	a sign, a signpost
p'yojip'an	a signpost
p'yön ha-	is comfortable, is convenient
pae	stomach
paedal ha-	deliver
paekhwajöm	department store
pakku-	change
palgün	bright
palsaeng ha-	occur, happen
pam	night
pang	room
pangapsümnida	pleased to meet you
panggüm	just now

panghyang	direction
pap	rice (cooked rice)
pap mök-	have a meal
pappü-	is busy
pappün	busy
paro	directly
pat-	to receive
pi-ga o-	rains, is raining
pihim	mixed
pilli-	borrow
pillyö-ju-	lend
pön	empty, vacant, free (of seats and rooms)
pisa-	is expensive
pissan	expensive (adjective)
pisüt ha-	look similar
po-	see, look (sometimes = meet)
poda	more than
pogwan ha-	keep
pöl	(counter for clothes)
pölgüm	a fine, a penalty
pön	number
pön	time (as in first time, second time, many times)
ponae-	send
pöri-	throw away
poyö-ju-	to show
ppalgan	red
ppalli	quickly
ppang	bread
ppun	only
pujagyong	a side-effect
pulch'injöl ha-	be unhelpful, be unkind, be impolite
pulgogi	Korean spiced marinated beef
Pulguksa	Pulguksa (Korean Buddhist temple, near Kyongju)
pulp'yöng ha-	complain
pun	minute
purü-	call
put'ak ha-	make a request
pur'ö	from
pwa-juseyo	please look at
pwayo	see, look (polite style, irregular)

pyölib	<i>a special matter, something particular</i>
pyölib öpsumyön . . .	<i>if you don't have anything special on . . .</i>
pyölib	<i>not particularly, not really (+ negative)</i>
pyölib öps-	<i>have almost none, scarcely have any</i>
pyöngwon	<i>hospital</i>
-rö	<i>in order to</i>
sa-saek	<i>buy (verb stem)</i>
saenggak	<i>colour</i>
saenggak	<i>thought</i>
saenggak na-saenggi-	<i>idea</i>
saengil	<i>remember, it comes to mind</i>
saengshin	<i>to occur, happen, take place; look like</i>
saengson	<i>birthday (normal form)</i>
sagöri	<i>birthday (honorific form)</i>
sagwa	<i>fish</i>
sai-e	<i>crossroads</i>
sajang(nim)	<i>apple</i>
sajön	<i>between</i>
samushil	<i>manager (honorific form)</i>
san	<i>dictionary</i>
sangja	<i>office</i>
sangjö	<i>mountain</i>
Sangjö ünhaeng	<i>box</i>
saöp	<i>trade</i>
saram	<i>Commercial Bank (literally, trade bank)</i>
sarang ha-	<i>business</i>
sashil	<i>person</i>
sauna	<i>love</i>
sayo	<i>fact (the fact is . . .)</i>
se	<i>sauna</i>
shi	<i>buy (stem plus polite ending -yo)</i>
shigan	<i>three (pure Korean)</i>
shigö-iss-	<i>o'clock</i>
shijak ha-	<i>time, hour</i>
	<i>be bad, have gone off, be stale</i>
	<i>begin, start</i>

shijang	<i>market</i>
shik-	<i>get cold</i>
shikhu	<i>after meal</i>
shikkuröwoyo!	<i>shut up!, be quiet!</i>
shiksa ha-	<i>have meal</i>
shiktang	<i>restaurant</i>
shillye hamnida	<i>excuse me, please</i>
shillye-jiman . . .	<i>excuse me, but . . .</i>
shilsu	<i>mistake</i>
shilsu ha-	<i>make a mistake</i>
shim ha-	<i>be serious</i>
shinae	<i>town centre</i>
shinmwun	<i>newspaper</i>
shirö ha-	<i>to dislike</i>
shisöl	<i>facility</i>
shwipke	<i>easily</i>
shyöch'u	<i>shirt</i>
shyop'ing (ha-)	<i>shopping (dolgo shopping)</i>
sö-	<i>stop (stem)</i>
söbisu	<i>service</i>
sogaeha-	<i>to introduce</i>
soju	<i>soju, Korean wine/vodka</i>
solchikhi	<i>frankly, honestly</i>
solchikhi mal hae-boseyo	<i>tell me the truth!</i>
solchikhi mal hae-sö	<i>honestly speaking; to tell the truth; in fact . . .</i>
sonnim	<i>customer</i>
söryu	<i>document</i>
Söul	<i>Seoul</i>
ssa-	<i>is cheap</i>
ssan	<i>cheap (adjective)</i>
-shik	<i>each, per (see notes)</i>
ssögössöyo	<i>has gone bad, has gone off (polite style, past tense)</i>
ssü-	<i>write</i>
ssü-ge	<i>usable</i>
süt'enduba	<i>bar (standing bar)</i>
süt'ail	<i>style</i>
süt'uresu	<i>stress</i>
sugo haseyo	<i>work hard! (said to someone doing their job)</i>
sugön	<i>towel</i>
sugön-ul kara-tallago	<i>I asked (her) to change the towel</i>
haessöyo	

market	<i>market</i>
get cold	<i>get cold</i>
after meal	<i>after meal</i>
shut up!, be quiet!	<i>shut up!, be quiet!</i>
have meal	<i>have meal</i>
restaurant	<i>restaurant</i>
excuse me, please	<i>excuse me, please</i>
excuse me, but . . .	<i>excuse me, but . . .</i>
mistake	<i>mistake</i>
make a mistake	<i>make a mistake</i>
be serious	<i>be serious</i>
town centre	<i>town centre</i>
newspaper	<i>newspaper</i>
to dislike	<i>to dislike</i>
facility	<i>facility</i>
easily	<i>easily</i>
shirt	<i>shirt</i>
shopping (dolgo shopping)	<i>shopping (dolgo shopping)</i>
stop (stem)	<i>stop (stem)</i>
service	<i>service</i>
to introduce	<i>to introduce</i>
soju, Korean wine/vodka	<i>soju, Korean wine/vodka</i>
frankly, honestly	<i>frankly, honestly</i>
tell me the truth!	<i>tell me the truth!</i>
honestly speaking; to tell the truth; in fact . . .	<i>honestly speaking; to tell the truth; in fact . . .</i>
customer	<i>customer</i>
document	<i>document</i>
Seoul	<i>Seoul</i>
is cheap	<i>is cheap</i>
cheap (adjective)	<i>cheap (adjective)</i>
each, per (see notes)	<i>each, per (see notes)</i>
has gone bad, has gone off (polite style, past tense)	<i>has gone bad, has gone off (polite style, past tense)</i>
write	<i>write</i>
usable	<i>usable</i>
bar (standing bar)	<i>bar (standing bar)</i>
style	<i>style</i>
stress	<i>stress</i>
work hard! (said to someone doing their job)	<i>work hard! (said to someone doing their job)</i>
towel	<i>towel</i>
I asked (her) to change the towel	<i>I asked (her) to change the towel</i>

sulchip	pub
suyōng ha-	swim
suyōngjang	swimming pool
t'a-	take (transport), travel on (transport)
t'akku	table tennis
ta	all, everything
Taegu	Korean city
taehaesō	about, concerning (noun e taehaesō)
taehak	university
taehakkyo	university
taesagwan	embassy
taeshin	instead, on behalf of
tal	month
tangjang	immediately
tangshin	you (often between husband and wife)
tari	leg
tarū-	be different (polite style = tallayo)
tarūn	another, different
tashi	again
taūm (daum)	after, next
te	place
tō	more
tō isang	any more
Tobongsan	Tobongsan (Korean mountain in Seoul)
toe-	become
toksō	reading
ton	money
tongch'ang	colleague (fellow student in this case)
Tongdaemun	Great East Gate (in Seoul), Tongdaemun
torao-	come back, return
tōrōp-	be dirty (polite = torowoyo, p-verb like kakkap- etc.)
towa-ju-	to help
tōwosō	because it is hot, because you're hot
tteae	time (when)

ttak chilsaeg-ieyo	hate, is awful (to me)
ttara-	follow
tto	again; moreover, also
ttok	exactly, precisely (often used with kat'-)
tu	two (pure Korean number)
tul	two (when you mean 'the two of them', 'both')
tūngsan	mountain climbing
tūrilkkayo	would you like? (lit., shall I give you?)
tūrō iss-	be contained, be included
tūrō o-	to enter
tut'ong	headache
uch'eguk	post office
uhoejōn	right turn
uhoejōn han taum-e	after doing a right turn
ūmryosu	drink
ūmryosu hashigessōyo?	would you like something to drink?
ūmshik	food
ūng	yes (casual form)
ūnhaeng	bank
ūnhaengwon	bank clerk
unjōnsu	a driver
uri	we/our
uri tul-man kayo?	is it just the two of us going?
-uro	towards, in the direction of (-ro, after vowels)
usan	umbrella
usōn	first
-ūy	belonging to
ūgyōn	suggestion, opinion
ūynon	discussion
ūynon ha-	discuss
ūyōnhi	by chance, coincidentally
wa!	wow!
waeyo	why?
wain	wine
wangbok	return
wanhaeng	slow train
wassōyo	came (past tense form)

wayo  
weir'ö  
wihö'm ha-  
won  
won ha-  
wonin  
wonsungi

yaegi ha-  
yag-ul mögöyagessöyo  
yak  
yakkuk  
yaksa  
yaksok  
yangju  
yangmal  
yangshiktang  
ye  
yeyak ha-  
yöboseyo  
yögi  
yögi-so  
yogüm  
yöja ch'ingu  
yojüm  
yojüm chaemi-ga öttöseyo?

yojüm saöb-un öttaeyo?  
yöl  
yöldu  
yöll-i-ji an(h)-  
yöng-han  
yöngguk  
yöngghwa  
yöngöp  
yöngsujung  
yöp'  
yuhaeng ha-

come (polite style form)  
waiter  
be dangerous  
won (unit of Korean currency)  
want, require  
reason, cause  
monkey

talk, tell  
I'll have to take some medicine  
medicine  
chemist, drugstore  
pharmacist, chemist  
appointment  
spirits, western liquor  
socks  
western restaurant  
yes (politer form of ne)  
reserve, book  
hello (on the telephone)  
here  
from here (abbrev of yogi-eso)  
fee, fare  
girlfriend  
nowadays  
how are you doing?, how are things these days?  
how is business these days?  
ten (pure Korean number)  
twelve (pure Korean number)  
does not open  
English-Korean  
Englandish, Britainish  
film, movie  
business  
receipt  
next door  
be popular, be in vogue

about, concerning  
about/around, approximately  
after (after, next)  
again (moreover, also, furthermore)  
all, everything  
almost, nearly  
alone  
altogether, everything,  
everyone  
always  
and  
and (to join clauses)  
and (also) (used to begin a sentence)  
apple  
appointment, promise  
area, district, vicinity  
at (a certain time)

bag, briefcase  
bank (bank clerk)  
basement  
bed; (room with a bed)  
(- on the floor, Korean style)  
beer  
before  
begin, start  
big  
birthday (honorific form)  
black

-e; -e taehaeso  
han (number/time) cchüm  
hu (taum/daum)  
tashi, tto

ta  
köüy  
honja  
modu

hangsang  
-hago  
-ko  
küriigo

sagwa  
yaksok  
kü'nch'o  
-e

kabang  
ünhaeng (unhaengwon)  
chiha  
ch'imdae; ch'imdae bang,  
ondolbang  
maekju  
chön  
shijak ha-  
k'ün  
saengil (saengshin)  
kömjöng

blue jeans  
body  
borrow  
boy/girlfriend  
bread  
break down  
breakfast  
breakfast (abbreviated form);  
(to have breakfast)

bus  
bus stop  
business  
busy  
buy (verb stem)  
by far, far and away

call  
cancel  
car  
car (short form)  
careful/cautious  
change (clothes/trains etc.)  
cheap  
check, confirm  
China  
Chinese character  
church  
clean, clean up  
colour  
come (out)  
comfortable/convenient  
company  
complain  
cotton  
country bumpkin, yokel  
cup  
customer

dangerous  
decide  
deliver  
depart  
department (store)  
departure

ch'ongbaji  
mom  
pilli-  
namja/yōja ch'ingu  
ppang  
kojang na-  
ach'imshiksa  
ach'im; ach'im mök-

bösu  
chöngnyujang  
saöp  
pappü-  
sa-  
hwolssin

purü-  
ch'wiso ha-  
chadongch'a  
ch'a  
chöshim ha-  
paku- (kara-ip-t'a-)  
ssa-  
hwagin ha-  
chungguk  
hanja  
kyohoe  
ch'ongso ha-  
saek  
o- (nao-)  
p'yon ha-  
hoesa  
pulp'yong ha-  
myon  
ch'onsaram  
chan  
sonnim

wihom ha-  
chöng ha-  
paedal ha-  
ch'ulbal ha-  
hakkwa (paekhwajom)  
ch'ulbal

design  
dictionary  
different  
directly  
discount  
dish  
dislike  
district, area, vicinity  
do (verb stem)  
document  
door  
double, times  
drink  
driver  
during

each, every (each, per)  
early  
easy, easily  
eat  
eat (honorific, equivalent  
of mok-); (try eating)  
(honorific form)  
effort, strive  
embassy  
employee  
empty  
energy, strength  
England, Britain  
English-Korean  
entrance  
everyday  
everything, everyone, altogether  
eye, snow  
exactly, certainly, precisely  
exchange (Korea Exchange Bank)  
excuse me, sorry, but . . .  
excuse me, please  
exist, there is/are  
(honorific) (stem)  
expensive  
express train  
evening (time as well as meal)  
everything, all

dijain  
sajön  
tarü-  
chikchöp/paro  
harin  
kürüt  
shirö ha-  
kunch'ö  
ha-  
söryu  
mun  
bae  
mashi-  
unjönsu  
-dongan

-mada, (-sshik)  
ilcchik  
shwip-, shwipke  
mök-  
chapsushi-; chapswo po-

taesagwan  
chigwon  
pin  
him  
yöngguk  
yöng-han  
ipku  
maeil  
modu  
nun  
kkok, ttok  
oehwan (unheng)  
choesong ha-jiman  
shilye hamnida  
iss- (kyeshi-)

pissa-  
chikhaeng  
chönyok  
ta

family  
 feel  
 film, movie  
 (at) first  
 fish  
 food  
 (on) foot  
 frequently, often  
 (in) front of  
 from (location particle, place in  
 which something happens)  
 fruit

give  
 go (out)  
 good (stem)  
 good, fine, ok (polite style)  
 good, well (adverb)  
 goodbye (to someone  
 who is leaving)  
 goodbye (to someone  
 who is staying)  
 graduate  
 grandfather, old men in general  
 grandma, old women in general

handsome  
 have (stem)  
 have (honorific form)  
 head  
 health  
 hello (on the telephone)  
 help  
 here (from here)  
 hospital  
 house  
 how?  
 how is it?  
 however, nevertheless, but still  
 how much, long  
 hurts (polite style)  
 hurts (stem)  
 hurting, painful (adjective)  
 husband

kajok  
 nŭkki-  
 yŏnghwa  
 ch'ŏum  
 saengsŏn  
 ūmshik  
 kŏrŏsŏ  
 chaju  
 ap'esŏ  
 -put'ŏ, (-esŏ)

kwail

chu-  
 ka- (naga-)  
 choh-  
 choayo  
 chal  
 annyŏng*hi* kaseyo  
 annyŏng*hi* kyeseyo

cholŏp ha-  
 harabŏji  
 halmŏni

mŏshiss-  
 iss-  
 issŭshi-  
 mŏri  
 kŏngang  
 yŏboseyo  
 towa-ju-  
 yŏgi (yogi-so)  
 pyŏngwon  
 chip  
 ŏttŏlkk'e  
 ŏttaeyo?  
 kŭraedo  
 ŏlma, -dongan  
 ap'ayo  
 ap'ŭ-  
 ap'ŭn  
 namp'yŏn

if  
 important  
 in order to do  
 interesting, fun  
 introduce

Japan (Japanese language)  
 joke  
 jumper  
 just, simply  
 just now

kind, type, example  
 Korea  
 Korean-English  
 Korean language

language, word (to speaksay)  
 last year  
 lately, nowadays  
 least  
 left  
 leg  
 lend  
 letter  
 like (adjective)  
 like (stem), I like (polite form)  
 like that  
 like this  
 little (while, time); in a little while  
 little, a bit (quantity)  
 little, please  
 look, see (sometimes = to meet)  
 look for  
 look, to look for  
 lose  
 love  
 lunch

magazine  
 make (l- irregular verb like  
 p'al, nol etc.)  
 manager (honorific form)  
 many (h is not pronounced)

-myŏn  
 chungyo ha-  
 ha-rŏ  
 chaemi iss-  
 sogae ha-

ilbon (mal)  
 nongdam (ha-)  
 chamba  
 kŭnyang  
 panggŭm

kaji  
 hanguk  
 han-yŏng  
 hangungmal

mal (mal ha-)  
 changnyon  
 yojŭm  
 chŏgo-do  
 oen  
 tari  
 pillyŏ-ju  
 p'yŏnji  
 -ch'ŏrom  
 choa ha-, maŭm-e tŭrŏyo  
 kŭrŏk'e  
 irok'e  
 chamkkan; ittaga  
 chogŭm  
 chom  
 po-  
 ch'aj-  
 ch'aja po-  
 irŏbŏri-  
 sarang ha-  
 chŏmshim

chapchi  
 mandŭl-  
 sajang (nim)  
 man(h)-

market  
*maybe, perhaps*  
*me* (humble form)  
*medicine* (pharmacist), (drugstore)  
*meet* (stem) (pleased to meet you)

*mind, heart*  
*minute*  
*mis-, wrongly*  
*mixed*  
*money*  
*month*  
*more* (any more)  
*more than*  
*morning*  
*most*  
*mountain* (climbing)  
*my* (humble form)

*name*  
*needed* (not needed)  
*nevertheless, however, but still*  
*newspaper*  
*next*  
*night*  
*no*  
*noodles in cold soup*  
*not* (opposite of -(i)eyo)  
*not available, something*  
*which is not sold*  
*not know* (stem)  
*now*  
*nowadays, lately*  
*number* (times)  
*number* (time as in 'first time', etc.)

*o'clock*  
*office*  
*often, frequently*  
*OK, right, fine* (formal)  
*one*  
*one day*  
*only*  
*opinion* (in my) (humble form)

shijang  
 hokshi  
 na (chö)  
 yak (yaksa) (yakkuk)  
 manna- (mannaso)  
 pangapsümnida)  
 maüm  
 pun  
 chalmot  
 pibim  
 ton  
 tal  
 to  
 isang, -poda  
 ach'im  
 cheil  
 san (tungsan)  
 che

irüm  
 p'iryo ha-/iss- (ops-)  
 kúraedo  
 shinmun  
 yöp'  
 pam  
 aniyo  
 mul naengmyön  
 anieyo  
 an p'anün ke

morü-  
 chigüm  
 yojüm  
 -cchae  
 pon, (pon)

-shi  
 samushil  
 chaju  
 algessümnida  
 hana  
 haru  
 -man, -ppun  
 che saenggag-enün

*opposite side*  
*order; would you like to order?*

*our, we*  
*our, we* (humble form of *wuri*)  
*over there*

*park*  
*particularly* (not), (not) really  
 (negative)

*per, each*  
*perhaps, probably*  
*person*  
*place*  
*plan*  
*play* (tennis, piano etc.)  
*please don't . . .*  
*please give* (polite request form)  
*police* (man/station)  
*portion*  
*post office*  
*previously*  
*price*  
*problem*  
*promise, appointment*  
*pub*

*quality*  
*quickly*

*rains, is raining*  
*really* (colloquial)  
*really*  
*really(?)*, *is it(?)*, *is that so(?)*  
*read*  
*reason, cause*  
*receipt*  
*receive*  
*red*  
*refrigerator*  
*request*  
*reserve, book*  
*restaurant*

könnöp'yön  
 chumun ha-; chumum  
 hashigessöyo?

uri  
 chöhüy  
 kogi

chuch'a ha-  
 pyöllo

-e  
 ama  
 saram  
 kos  
 kyehoek  
 ch'i-  
 -ji maseyo  
 chuseyo  
 kyöngch'al/-sö  
 -inbun  
 uch'eguk  
 chön-e  
 kagyök  
 munje  
 yaksok  
 sulchip

chil  
 ppalli

pi-ga o-  
 chinchcha  
 chöngmal  
 kúraeyo(?)  
 ilk-  
 wonin  
 yöngsujüng  
 pat-  
 ppalgan  
 naenjanggo  
 put'ak ha-  
 yeyak ha-  
 shiktang

return (tickets)  
 rice, cooked (uncooked)  
 right (direction)  
 road  
 room  
  
 samelidentical  
 school  
 seat  
 see, look (sometimes = to meet)  
 shave  
 shop  
 sit  
 sit (stem)  
 side  
 side dish for drinks or snack  
 simply, just  
 single (ticket, way)  
 sleep  
 sleep (honorific)  
 smoker (compartment);  
 non-smoking compartment  
 snow  
 socks  
 soft drinks  
 something to say  
 son  
 song, 'karaoke' singing room  
 (I'm) sorry, I apologize, excuse me  
 so-so  
 soup  
 spicy  
 spirits, western liquor  
 squid  
 start, begin  
 stay, lodge, spend the night  
 stomach  
 stop (verb stem)  
 strange, bizarre  
 strength, energy  
 stylish/handsome  
 suit (a person)  
 Sunday  
 swim (swimming pool)

wangbok  
 pap (ssal)  
 orun  
 kil  
 pang  
  
 mach'angaji  
 hakkyo  
 chari  
 po-  
 myondo (-rul) ha-  
 kage  
 an  
 anj-  
 cchok  
 (marun) anju  
 kunyang  
 p'yondo  
 cha-  
 chumushi-  
 hupyonsok; kumyonsok  
  
 nun  
 yangmal  
 umryosu  
 ha-l mal  
 adul  
 norae (ha-), noraebang  
 choesong hamnida  
 kijo kuraeyo  
 kuk  
 maeun  
 yangju  
 ojingo  
 shijak ha-  
 muk-  
 pae  
 so-  
 isang ha-  
 him  
 moshiss-  
 ulli-  
 ilyoil  
 suyong ha- (suyongjang)

take (time duration)  
 take, travel on (transport)  
 talk, tell  
 tasty/tasteless  
 teach  
 telephone  
 telephone (verb stem)  
 thank you  
  
 that one (long way away)  
 that one (nearer than cho-)  
 (over) there  
 therefore, because of that  
 thing, object, fact (abbreviation  
 of kot spelt kos)  
 thought, idea (remember,  
 it comes to mind)  
 three (pure Korean)  
 this one (+ noun), this noun  
 ticket  
 time, hour  
 times/double  
 to (preposition, attaches to nouns)  
 to  
 to/for (a person)  
 today  
 together  
 together  
 tomorrow  
 too, also (particle, attaches  
 to nouns)  
 too (much)  
 towards, in the direction of  
 towel  
 town centre  
 turned out well, it's all for  
 the best  
 two  
  
 umbrella  
 understand (1/t verb like  
 tul- listen; ara-duroyo)  
 unfortunately  
 university

kulli-  
 t'a-  
 yaegi ha-  
 mash-i iss-/ops-  
 karuch'i-  
 chonhwa  
 chonhwa ha-  
 kamsahamnida/  
 komapsumnida  
 cho-  
 ku-  
 chogi  
 kuronikka  
 ko  
  
 saenggak (na-)  
  
 se  
 i-  
 p'yo  
 shigan  
 bae  
 -e  
 -ege  
 -hant'e  
 onul  
 hamkke  
 kach'i  
 naeil  
 -do  
  
 nomu  
 uro  
 sugon  
 shinae  
 chal toenneyo  
  
 du, i  
  
 usan  
 ara-dul-  
  
 an toenneyo  
 taehak, taehakkyo

<i>until</i>	-kkaji
USA	miguk
<i>very</i>	aju, ch'am
<i>vicinity, area, district</i>	kunch'o
<i>wait</i>	kidari-
<i>wait a moment (please)</i>	chamkkan kidariseyo
<i>waiter!</i>	ajössi
<i>waitress! (lit. = girl, unmarried woman)</i>	agassi
<i>want, require</i>	won ha-
<i>water</i>	mul
<i>we, our</i>	uri
<i>weather</i>	nalssi
<i>welcome!</i>	ösö oseyo
<i>well, good (adverb)</i>	chal
<i>what (object form) (full form)</i>	mwo (mwol) (muos)
<i>what (kind of, which) (number)</i>	musun, myöt/myöch'
<i>when</i>	önje
<i>where</i>	ödi
<i>which one?</i>	önü
<i>while, a little</i>	chamkkan
<i>who? (subject form)</i>	nugu(nuga)
<i>wife (not a polite form)</i>	chipsaram
<i>window</i>	ch'anggu
<i>with (irang after consonants)</i>	-rang
<i>word, language (to speak/say) (polite form)</i>	mal (mal ha-); malssüm
<i>work, matter, business</i>	il
<i>worry (to)</i>	kökchöng (ha-)
<i>write</i>	-ssü
<i>wrongly, mis-</i>	chalmot
<i>yes</i>	ne
<i>yet, still</i>	ajik
<i>year before last</i>	chaejangnyön
<i>you (often between married couples)</i>	tangshin

## Websites that can be used for learning Korean:

- Korean@Monash: <http://www.arts.monash.edu.au/korean/>
- Korean studies at Sogang University: <http://korean.sogang.ac.kr/>
- *An Introduction to Korean* by J. David Eisenberg: <http://langintro.com/kintro/>
- Korean through English with the Korean Ministry of Culture and Tourism: <http://www.mct.go.kr/hangeul/index.html>
- Korean Language Institute at the University of Bridgeport: <http://www.bridgeport.edu/Indexhtml/Centers/Disted/crsmaterials/korn101/>
- Mr Oh's learnkorean.com: <http://www.learnkorean.com/>
- Korea for kids: <http://www.curriculum.edu.au/accessasia/korea/kids.htm>
- Snapshots of Asia (Korea) at Access Asia: <http://www.curriculum.edu.au/accessasia/snapshot/korea/korea.htm>
- Learning hangul with Soyongdori: <http://library.thinkquest.org/20746/>
- Audio files of Korean conversations and narrations at Indiana University: <http://languagelab.bh.indiana.edu/korean101.html>
- Korean folk tales for kids at the Korean LG company website. This is not designed for language learning, but it has an English version as well as a Korean one. Go to <http://www.lg.co.kr/english/> and click on 'LG Korean Folk Tales'.